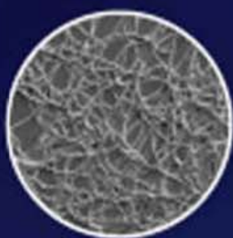
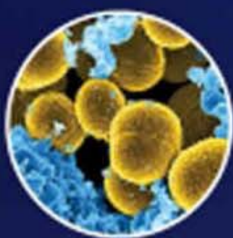
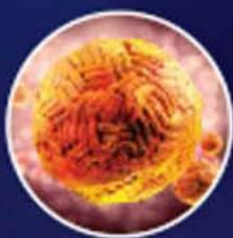
Feigin and **Cherry's**

Textbook of

Pediatric Infectious Diseases



EIGHTH EDITION | Volume 1

CHERRY • HARRISON • KAPLAN • STEINBACH • HOTEZ

ELSEVIER

Feigin and Cherry's *Textbook of* Pediatric Infectious Diseases

Feigin and Cherry's *Textbook of* Pediatric Infectious Diseases

EIGHTH EDITION

JAMES D. CHERRY, MD, MSc
Distinguished Research Professor of Pediatrics
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA;
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mattel Children's Hospital UCLA
Los Angeles, California

GAIL J. HARRISON, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Infectious Diseases Service
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

SHELDON L. KAPLAN, MD
Professor and Executive Vice-Chair
Head, Section of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Chief, Infectious Disease Service
Head, Department of Pediatric Medicine
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

WILLIAM J. STEINBACH, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Professor in Molecular Genetics and Microbiology
Chief, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Director, Duke Pediatric Immunocompromised Host Program
Director, International Pediatric Fungal Network
Duke University School of Medicine
Durham, North Carolina

PETER J. HOTEZ, MD, PhD
Dean, National School of Tropical Medicine
Professor, Pediatrics and Molecular & Virology and Microbiology
Head, Section of Pediatric Tropical Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine;
Endowed Chair of Tropical Pediatrics
Center for Vaccine Development
Texas Children's Hospital;
Professor, Department of Biology
Baylor University
Waco, Texas;
Baker Institute Fellow in Disease and Poverty
Rice University
Houston, Texas;
Co-Editor-in-Chief, *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*

ELSEVIER

ELSEVIER

1600 John F. Kennedy Blvd.
Ste 1800
Philadelphia, PA 19103-2899

FEIGIN AND CHERRY'S TEXTBOOK OF PEDIATRIC INFECTIOUS DISEASES, EIGHTH EDITION ISBN: 978-0-323-37692-1

Copyright © 2019 by Elsevier, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Previous editions copyrighted © 2014, 2009, 2004, 1998, 1992, 1987, 1981 by Saunders, an imprint of Elsevier, Inc.

Chapters 189 and 232 are in the public domain.

Hookworm and tick images courtesy of Anna Grove Photography. Staphylococcus aureus image from CDC Public Health Image Library (provided by Frank DeLeo, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases). Mosquito scanning electron micrograph from DCD Public Health Imaging Library (provided by Dr. Paul Howell, CDC).

ISBN: 978-0-323-37692-1

Senior Acquisitions Editor: Kate Dimock
Senior Content Development Specialist: Jennifer Shreiner
Publishing Services Manager: Patricia Tannian
Senior Project Manager: Carrie Stetz
Design Direction: Maggie Reid

Printed in China

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow libraries in developing countries

www.elsevier.com • www.bookaid.org

To my wife, Jeanne M. Cherry, who passed away on June 2, 2017
To my children, James Cherry, Jeffrey Cherry and Kass Hogan,
Susan Cherry, and Kenneth and Jennifer Cherry
To my grandchildren, Ferguson, Dennis, and Siena Rose Cherry
James Cherry

To my husband, Neil Harrison
To my children and sons-in-law, Emily Wolfe and Josh Wolfe,
Kelly Green and Daniel Green, Matthew Demmler, Amy Demmler,
Anna Rose Demmler, and Haley Harrison
To my grandchildren, Jensen Wolfe and William Green
To my brother, Loddie Naymola
Gail Harrison

To my wife, Marsha Kaplan
To my children, Lauren Kaplan, Mindy Kaplan Langland,
and son-in-law Lance Langland
To my grandchildren, Reece and Macy Langland
Sheldon Kaplan

To my wife, Sandy Steinbach
To my children, Amelia Steinbach, Aidan Steinbach, and Conner Franzen
To my parents, Charles and Kathy Steinbach
William Steinbach

To my wife, Ann Hotez
To my children, Matthew, Emily, Rachel, and Daniel Hotez
To my mother, Jean Hotez, and mother-in-law, Marcia Frifield
To the memories of my father, Ed Hotez, and father-in-law, Don Frifield
Peter Hotez

Ralph D. Feigin, MD

April 3, 1938–August 14, 2008

This eighth edition of the *Textbook of Pediatric Infectious Diseases* is dedicated to Ralph D. Feigin. As everyone in pediatrics and, in particular, pediatric infectious diseases, knows, Ralph was an extraordinary individual, and his untimely death in 2008 leaves a void that will never be filled.

Ralph Feigin was born in New York City on April 3, 1938. He graduated from Columbia College in New York City in 1958 and received his M.D. from Boston University School of Medicine in 1962. He married Judith S. Zobel, a childhood friend, in 1960 while in medical school. Ralph completed his first two years of pediatric residency at Boston City Hospital and his third year at the Massachusetts General Hospital. He then fulfilled his military service requirement at the United States Army Research Institute of Infectious Diseases, Ft. Detrick, Frederick, Maryland. While at the United States Army Research Institute, he participated in significant studies relating to circadian periodicity and susceptibility to infections, as well as other studies that resulted in eight publications for which he was the first author. After completing his service commitment, he was Chief Resident at Massachusetts General Hospital during the 1967-68 academic year.

Ralph was recruited to Washington University in St. Louis by Phil Dodge in 1968, and soon thereafter he and one of us (JDC), who was then at St. Louis University, got together and forged an academic and personal friendship that continued until the time of his death. Over 40 years ago, Ralph and Jim recognized the need for a comprehensive book on pediatric infectious diseases, but because of their busy schedules the plan was put on hold, and in 1973 Jim moved to California. In 1976, the pediatric research meetings were held in St. Louis, and at this time Jim and Ralph met with W. B. Saunders representatives, and the book was conceived. The first edition of the textbook was published 5 years later in the fall of 1981. In comparison with this 8th edition, it was a modest effort, with 44 chapters and 124 contributors.

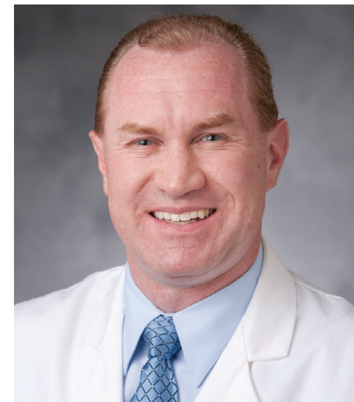
At Washington University and St. Louis Children's Hospital, Ralph developed one of the finest infectious diseases divisions in the country. His "Feigin Rounds" were an unparalleled learning experience and were legendary among medical students and residents. In 1977, Ralph moved to Houston, Texas, to accept the challenge of being the Chair of Pediatrics for Baylor College of Medicine and the Physician-in-Chief at Texas Children's Hospital. During the ensuing 30 years, the Department grew from 43 faculty members to almost 500. One of us (SLK) came under Ralph's spell in St. Louis and moved to Houston with him. Another one of us (GJH), an intern in Houston in 1977, was waiting for Dr. Feigin when he arrived.

In Houston, Ralph served as the Chair of Pediatrics for Baylor College of Medicine and the Physician-in-Chief at Texas Children's Hospital for 31 years. For 7 years of his tenure, he also served as President and CEO of Baylor College of Medicine. In addition to his commitments in Houston, Ralph served in leadership roles on more than 100 local, regional, and national committees and professional societies. His efforts in persuading government officials of all ranks helped children in Texas, the United States, and in all parts of the world. Many consider him to have been the foremost pediatrician in the world.

Not only was Dr. Feigin a powerhouse of energy, speed, and unsurpassed accomplishments, but he also was a gentleman, full of compassion, warmth, and kindness, and a man who kept people and patients first in his heart and mind. He was a loving husband to his wife, Judy, and a proud father to his three children, Susan, Debra, and Michael; doting grandfather to his six grandchildren, Rebecca, Matthew, Sarah, Rachel, Jacob, and Eli; and a mentor to so many in the field of pediatrics and pediatric infectious diseases. Ralph Feigin is missed by everyone who knew him, particularly by Judy Feigin and the family as well as by the present editors of this eighth edition of Feigin and Cherry.

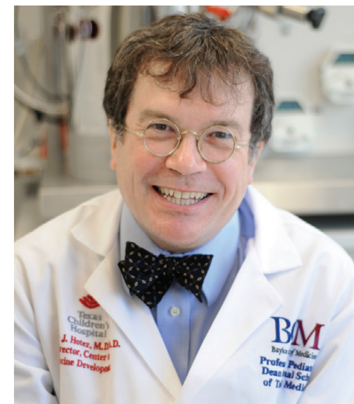
James D. Cherry, MD, MSc
Distinguished Research Professor of Pediatrics
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA;
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mattel Children's Hospital UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Gail J. Harrison, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Infectious Diseases Service
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas



William J. Steinbach, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Professor in Molecular Genetics and Microbiology
Chief, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Director, Duke Pediatric Immunocompromised Host Program
Director, International Pediatric Fungal Network
Duke University School of Medicine
Durham, North Carolina

Sheldon L. Kaplan, MD
Professor and Executive Vice-Chair
Head, Section of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Chief, Infectious Disease Service
Head, Department of Pediatric Medicine
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas



Peter J. Hotez, MD, PhD
Dean, National School of Tropical Medicine
Professor, Pediatrics and Molecular & Virology and Microbiology
Head, Section of Pediatric Tropical Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine;
Endowed Chair of Tropical Pediatrics
Center for Vaccine Development
Texas Children's Hospital;
Professor, Department of Biology
Baylor University
Waco, Texas;
Baker Institute Fellow in Disease and Poverty
Rice University
Houston, Texas;
Co-Editor-in-Chief, *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*

Contributors

John Aaskov, BSc, PhD, FRCPath
World Health Organization Collaborating Centre for Arbovirus Reference and Research
Institute of Health and Biomedical Innovation
Queensland University of Technology
Brisbane, QLD, Australia

Kristina Adachi, MD, MA
Clinical Instructor
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Infectious Diseases
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Christoph Aebi, MD
Professor of Pediatrics and Infectious Diseases
Chairman, Department of Pediatrics
University of Bern
Bern, Switzerland

Kenneth A. Alexander, MD, PhD
Chief
Division of Allergy, Immunology, Rheumatology, and Infectious Diseases
Nemours Children's Hospital;
Professor of Pediatrics
University of Central Florida College of Medicine
Orlando, Florida

Ghada N. Al-Rawahi, MD, DTM&H (London), D(ABMM), FRCPC
Medical Microbiologist
Children's and Women's Health Centre of British Columbia;
Medical Lead, Infection Prevention & Control
BC Cancer Agency;
Clinical Associate Professor
University of British Columbia
Vancouver, BC, Canada

Duha Al-Zubeidi, MD
Children's Mercy Hospital
Kansas City, Missouri

Seher Anjum, MD
Professor, Division of Infectious Disease
Department of Internal Medicine
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Monica I. Ardura, DO, MSCS
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Ohio State University;
Medical Director, Host Defense Program
Department of Pediatrics, Infectious Diseases, and Immunology
Nationwide Children's Hospital
Columbus, Ohio

Stephen S. Arnon, MD, MPH
Founder and Chief
Infant Botulism Treatment and Prevention Program
California Department of Public Health
Richmond, California

Amy Arrington, MD, PhD
Section Chief, Global Biologic Preparedness
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital;
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatric Critical Care Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Ann M. Arvin, MD
Lucile Salter Packard Professor of Pediatrics
Professor of Microbiology and Immunology
Stanford University School of Medicine
Stanford, California

Robert L. Atmar, MD
Professor
Department of Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Amira Baker, MD
Fellow, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mattel Children's Hospital
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Carol J. Baker, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Molecular Virology & Microbiology
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Robert S. Baltimore, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Epidemiology
Yale University School of Medicine;
Associate Director of Infection Control
Yale-New Haven Hospital
New Haven, Connecticut

Stephen J. Barenkamp, MD
Professor of Pediatrics and Molecular Microbiology
Department of Pediatrics
St. Louis University School of Medicine;
Director
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Cardinal Glennon Children's Medical Center
St. Louis, Missouri

Elizabeth D. Barnett, MD
Attending Physician
Boston Medical Center
Boston, Massachusetts

Theresa Barton, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Gil Benard, MD, PhD
Medical Researcher
Departamento Dermatologia
Faculdade de Medicina;
Laboratorio de Micologia Medica
Instituto de Medicina Tropical
Universidade de São Paulo
São Paolo, Brazil

Jeffrey M. Bender, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital Los Angeles;
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics and Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of Southern California
Los Angeles, California

Gregory J. Berry, PhD, D(ABMM)
Assistant Medical Director
Division of Infectious Disease Diagnostics
Northwell Health Laboratories;
Assistant Professor of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Hofstra Northwell School of Medicine
Lake Success, New York

Amit Bhatt, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Ophthalmology
Baylor College of Medicine;
Pediatric Ophthalmology Subsection
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Charles D. Bluestone, MD
Distinguished Professor Emeritus of Otolaryngology
University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Jeffrey L. Blumer, PhD, MD
Professor and Chairman
Department of Pediatrics
The University of Toledo
Toledo, Ohio

Claire Bocchini, MD, MS
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Kenneth M. Boyer, MD
Professor and Woman's Board Chair
Department of Pediatrics
Rush Medical College of Rush University;
Clinical Associate
Department of Pediatrics
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

John S. Bradley, MD
Professor and Chief
Division of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
University of California–San Diego School of Medicine
San Diego, California

Patricia Brasil, MD, PhD
Clinical Researcher
Instituto Nacional de Infectologia
Fundação Oswaldo Cruz
Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

William J. Britt, MD
Charles A. Alford Professor of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
University of Alabama
Birmingham, Alabama

David E. Bronstein, MD, MS
Department of Pediatrics
Southern California Permanente Medical Group
Palmdale, California

David A. Bruckner, ScD
Professor Emeritus
Department of Pathology & Laboratory Medicine
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Kristina A. Bryant, MD
Professor of Pediatric Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
University of Louisville
Louisville, Kentucky

Steven C. Buckingham, MD, MA[†]
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Tennessee Health Science Center
Memphis, Tennessee

Carrie L. Byington, MD
Vice Chancellor, Health Services
Senior Vice President, Health Sciences Center
Jean and Thomas McMullin Professor and Dean
College of Medicine
Texas A&M University and System
Bryan, Texas

Miguel M. Cabada, MD, MSc
Assistant Professor
Department of Internal Medicine
Division of Infectious Diseases
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Adriana Cadilla, MD
Physician
Department of Pediatric Infectious Disease
Nemours Children's Hospital
Orlando, Florida

Judith R. Campbell, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Infectious Disease Service
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Justin E. Caron, MD
Pathology Resident
Department of Pathology
University of Utah School of Medicine
Salt Lake City, Utah

[†]Deceased.

Maria Carrillo-Marquez, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Tennessee Health Science Center
Memphis, Tennessee

Janet R. Casey, MD
Director of Research
Legacy Pediatrics;
Clinical Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Department of Pediatrics
University of Rochester
Rochester, New York

Luis A. Castagnini, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine/Children's Hospital of San Antonio
San Antonio, Texas

Mariam R. Chacko, MBBS
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Adolescent Medicine and Sports Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital;
Medical Director, Adolescent Medicine
Baylor Teen Health Clinics
Houston, Texas

Lakshmi Chandramohan, PhD, D(ABMM)
Senior Scientist
Biopharma Division
NeoGenomics Laboratories
Houston, Texas

Louisa E. Chapman, MD, MSPH[†]
Medical Epidemiologist
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Atlanta, Georgia

Remi N. Charrel, MD, PhD
UMR "Emergence des Pathologies Virales"
Aix Marseille Université;
Fondation IHU Mediterranée Infection
APHM Public Hospitals of Marseille
Marseille, France

Elsa Chea-Woo, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Universidad Peruana Cayetano Heredia
Lima, Peru

Ira M. Cheifetz, MD, FCCM, FAARC
Chief Medical Officer
Children's Services
Duke Children's Hospital;
Associate Chief Medical Officer
Duke University Hospital;
Division Chief, Pediatric Critical Care Medicine
Professor, Departments of Pediatrics and Anesthesiology
Duke University Medical Center
Durham, North Carolina

[†]Deceased.

Tempe K. Chen, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of California Irvine School of Medicine
Irvine, California

James D. Cherry, MD, MSc
Distinguished Research Professor of Pediatrics
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA;
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mattel Children's Hospital UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Javier Chinen, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Pediatrics, Allergy, and Immunology
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Natascha Ching, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Pediatrics
John A. Burns School of Medicine at the University of Hawaii;
Physician
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Kapiolani Medical Center for Women and Children
Kapiolani Medical Specialists
Honolulu, Hawaii

Ivan K. Chinn, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

John C. Christenson, MD
Professor of Clinical Pediatrics
Ryan White Center for Pediatric Infectious Disease and Global Health
Indiana University School of Medicine
Indianapolis, Indiana

Susan E. Coffin, MD, MPH
Professor of Pediatrics
Associate Chief
Division of Infectious Diseases
UPENN School of Medicine;
Associate Hospital Epidemiologist
Children's Hospital of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Armando G. Correa, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Elaine G. Cox, MD
Professor of Clinical Pediatrics
Ryan White Center for Pediatric Infectious Disease and Global Health
Indiana University School of Medicine
Indianapolis, Indiana

Jonathan D. Crews, MD, MS
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of San Antonio
San Antonio, Texas

Andrea T. Cruz, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Zev Davidovics, MD
Department of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Digestive Diseases, Hepatology, and Nutrition
Connecticut Children's Medical Center
Hartford, Connecticut;
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
University of Connecticut School of Medicine
Farmington, Connecticut

Walter N. Dehority, MD, MSc
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of New Mexico Health Sciences Center
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Xavier de Lamballerie, MD
Professor
Emergence des Pathologies Virales
Aix-Marseille Université;
IRD French Institute of Research for Development
EHESP French School of Public Health
Laboratory of Virology
IHU Mediterranée Infection
APHM Public Hospitals of Marseille
Marseille, France

Penelope H. Dennehy, MD
Director
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Hasbro Children's Hospital;
Professor and Vice Chair for Academic Affairs
Department of Pediatrics
Alpert Medical School of Brown University
Providence, Rhode Island

Minh L. Doan, MD, COL, MC, USA
Chief, Division of Pediatric Pulmonology
Brooke Army Medical Center
San Antonio, Texas

Simon R. Dobson, MD, FRCPC
Medical Director, Infection Prevention and Control
Antimicrobial Stewardship Consultant
Sidra Medical and Research Center
Qatar Foundation
Doha, Qatar

Jan E. Drutz, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Kara A. Dubray, MD
Clinical Instructor
Pediatric Infectious Disease
Lucile Packard Children's Hospital
Palo Alto, California

Andrea Duppenthaler, MD
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's University Hospital
Bern, Switzerland

Christopher C. Dvorak, MD
Professor & Chief
Department of Pediatric Allergy, Immunology, & Bone Marrow Transplant
University of California–San Francisco Benioff Children's Hospital
San Francisco, California

Paul H. Edelstein, MD
Professor Emeritus of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
University of Pennsylvania Perelman School of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Kathryn M. Edwards, MD
Sarah H. Sell and Cornelius Vanderbilt Chair in Pediatrics
Department of Pediatrics
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Nashville, Tennessee

Morven S. Edwards, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases Section
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Samer S. El-Kamary, MBChB, MS, MPH
Associate Professor
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health
University of Maryland School of Medicine;
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Maryland School of Medicine
Baltimore, Maryland

Janet A. Englund, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Washington/Seattle Children's Hospital
Seattle, Washington

Jessica Ericson, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Pennsylvania State University College of Medicine
Hershey, Pennsylvania

Leland L. Fan, MD
Professor Emeritus
Department of Pediatrics
University of Colorado School of Medicine
Aurora, Colorado

Myke Federman, MD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Critical Care
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Pedro Fernando da C. Vasconcelos, MD, PhD
Chief, Department of Arbovirology and Hemorrhagic Fevers
Coordinator, National Reference Laboratory of Arboviruses
Director, National Institute of Science and Technology for Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers
Director, PAHO-WHO CC for Research and Diagnostic Reference on Arbovirus
Instituto Evandro Chagas
SVS/Ministry of Health
Ananindeua, Brazil

Philip R. Fischer, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Brian T. Fisher, DO, MPH, MSCE
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics and Epidemiology
Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania;
Division of Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Randall G. Fisher, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Eastern Virginia Medical School;
Medical Director
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of The King's Daughters
Norfolk, Virginia

Douglas S. Fishman, MD
Director of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy and Pancreaticobiliary Program
Texas Children's Hospital;
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Anthony R. Flores, MD, MPH, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Texas Children's Hospital
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Catherine Foster, MD
Clinical Postdoctoral Fellow
Pediatrics, Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Ellen M. Friedman, MD
Professor
Department of Otolaryngology
Texas Children's Hospital;
Director
Center for Professionalism in Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Claudia Raja Gabaglia, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor
Biomedical Research Institute of Southern California
Oceanside, California

Lynne S. Garcia, MS, CLS, BLM, FAAM
Director
LSG & Associates
Santa Monica, California

Gregory M. Gauthier, MD, MS
Associate Professor
Department of Medicine
University of Wisconsin
Madison, Wisconsin

Anne A. Gershon, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York, New York

Francis Gigliotti, MD
Professor and Chief of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Associate Chair for Academic Affairs
University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry
Rochester, New York

Mark A. Gilger, MD
Pediatrician-in-Chief
Children's Hospital of San Antonio;
Professor and Vice Chair
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Susan L. Gillespie, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Carol A. Glaser, DVM, MPVM, MD
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Permanente Medical Group
Oakland Medical Center
Oakland, California

David L. Goldman, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Children's Hospital at Montefiore/Albert Einstein College of Medicine
New York, New York

Jennifer L. Goldman, MD
Department of Pediatrics
Children's Mercy Hospitals and Clinics
Kansas City, Missouri

Nira A. Goldstein, MD, MPH
Professor and Attending Physician
Department of Otolaryngology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
New York, New York

Blanca E. Gonzalez, MD
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
Cleveland Clinic Lerner College of Medicine of Case Western Reserve University
Center for Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Cleveland Clinic Children's
Cleveland, Ohio

Michael D. Green, MD, MPH
Professor
Department of Pediatrics, Surgery, & Clinical and Translational Research
University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of UPMC
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Andreas Groll, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology
University Children's Hospital
Muenster, Germany

Charles Grose, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Director of Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital
University of Iowa
Iowa City, Iowa

Duane J. Gubler, ScD, FAAAS, FIDSA, FASTMH
Emeritus Professor
Programme in Emerging Infectious Diseases
Duke-NUS Medical School
Singapore;
Chair, Global Dengue and Aedes Transmitted Diseases Consortium
International Vaccine Institute
Seoul, Korea

Javier Nieto Guevara, MD, MPH
Infectious Diseases Specialist
Panama City, Panama

Caroline B. Hall, MD†
Formerly Professor
Department of Pediatrics and Medicine
University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry
Rochester, New York

Roy A. Hall, BSc(Hons), PhD
Professor
School of Chemistry and Molecular Biosciences
University of Queensland
St Lucia, QLD, Australia

Scott B. Halstead, MD
Adjunct Professor
Preventive Medicine and Biostatistics
Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences
Bethesda, Maryland

Shinjiro Hamano, MD, PhD
Professor
Department of Parasitology
Institute of Tropical Medicine
Nagasaki University
Nagasaki, Japan

†Deceased.

Margaret R. Hammerschlag, MD
Professor of Pediatrics and Medicine
SUNY Downstate Medical Center
New York, New York

Nicole L. Hannemann, MD
Chief Resident and Clinical Instructor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

I. Celine Hanson, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Nada Harik, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
George Washington University School of Medicine and Health Sciences
Children's National Medical Center
Washington, DC

Kathleen H. Harriman, PhD, MPH, RN
Chief
Vaccine Preventable Diseases Epidemiology Section
Immunization Branch
California Department of Public Health
Richmond, California

Gail J. Harrison, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine;
Attending Physician
Infectious Diseases Service
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

C. Mary Healy, MB BCh, BAO, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Ulrich Heininger, MD
Chair, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of Basel Children's Hospital;
Member, Medical Faculty
University of Basel
Basel, Switzerland

Maria Hemming-Harlo, MD, PhD
Medical Researcher
Vaccine Research Center
University of Tampere
Tampere, Finland

Sheryl L. Henderson, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Wisconsin School of Medicine and Public Health
American Family Children's Hospital
Madison, Wisconsin

Gloria P. Heresi, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Texas Medical School at Houston
Houston, Texas

Peter W. Hiatt, MD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Section Head, Pediatric Pulmonology
Baylor College of Medicine;
Chief, Pulmonary Medicine
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Harry R. Hill, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics, Pathology, and Internal Medicine
University of Utah
Salt Lake City, Utah

David C. Hilmers, MD, EE, MPH
Professor
Departments of Internal Medicine and Pediatrics
Baylor Global Initiatives
Baylor Center for Space Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Jill A. Hoffman, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Keck School of Medicine
University of Southern California;
Attending Physician
Division of Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Peter J. Hotez, MD, PhD
Dean, National School of Tropical Medicine
Professor, Pediatrics and Molecular & Virology and Microbiology
Head, Section of Pediatric Tropical Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine;
Endowed Chair of Tropical Pediatrics
Center for Vaccine Development
Texas Children's Hospital;
Professor, Department of Biology
Baylor University
Waco, Texas;
Baker Institute Fellow in Disease and Poverty
Rice University
Houston, Texas;
Co-Editor-in-Chief, *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*

Leigh M. Howard, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee

Kristina G. Hulten, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Romney M. Humphries, PhD
Chief Scientific Officer
Accelerate Diagnostics
Tucson, Arizona

David A. Hunstad, MD
Associate Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Molecular Microbiology
Washington University School of Medicine
St. Louis, Missouri

W. Garrett Hunt, MD, MPH, DTM&H, FAAP
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Nationwide Children's Hospital/Ohio State University
Columbus, Ohio

W. Charles Huskins, MD, MSc
Professor of Pediatrics
Mayo Clinic School of Medicine;
Chair, Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mayo Clinic;
Vice Chair of Quality and Health Care Epidemiologist
Mayo Clinic Children's Center
Rochester, Minnesota

David Y. Hyun, MD
Senior Officer
Antibiotic Resistance Project
Pew Charitable Trusts
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Mary Anne Jackson, MD
Director, Infectious Diseases
Children's Mercy Kansas City
Professor of Pediatrics
UMKC School of Medicine
Kansas City, Missouri

Michael R. Jacobs, MB BCh, PhD
Professor of Pathology and Medicine
Department of Pathology
Case Western Reserve University;
Director of Clinical Microbiology
Department of Pathology
University Hospitals Cleveland Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

Richard F. Jacobs, MD, FAAP
Robert H. Fiser Jr, MD, Endowed Chair in Pediatrics
Pediatrician-in-Chief
Department of Pediatrics
Arkansas Children's Hospital;
Chairman and Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences
Little Rock, Arkansas

Ravi Jhaveri, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill School of Medicine
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Audrey R. Odom John, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Molecular Microbiology
Washington University School of Medicine
Saint Louis, Missouri

Samantha H. Johnston, MD, MPH
Associate Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
UCSF Benioff Children's Hospital Oakland
Oakland, California

Meena R. Julapalli, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Dermatology
University of Colorado
Denver, Colorado

Sheldon L. Kaplan, MD
Professor and Executive Vice-Chair
Head, Section of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Chief, Infectious Disease Service
Head, Department of Pediatric Medicine
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Gregory L. Kearns, PharmD, PhD
President
Arkansas Children's Research Institute
Senior Vice President and Chief Research Officer
Arkansas Children's;
Ross and Mary Whipple Family Distinguished Research Scientist
Professor of Pediatrics
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences
Little Rock, Arkansas

Jessica M. Khouri, MD
Senior Medical Officer
Infant Botulism Treatment and Prevention Program
California Department of Public Health
Richmond, California

Kwang Sik Kim, MD
Professor and Director
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine;
Professor
Department of Molecular Microbiology and Immunology
Johns Hopkins University Bloomberg School of Public Health
Baltimore, Maryland

Yae-Jean Kim, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Samsung Medical Center
Sungkyungkwan University School of Medicine
Seoul, Korea

Katherine Y. King, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Louis V. Kirchhoff, MD, MPH
Professor
Department of Internal Medicine (Infectious Diseases), Psychiatry, and Epidemiology
Carver College of Medicine and College of Public Health
University of Iowa
Iowa City, Iowa

Martin B. Kleiman, MD
Ryan White Professor Emeritus of Pediatrics
Ryan White Center for Pediatric Infectious Disease and Global Health
Indiana University School of Medicine
Indianapolis, Indiana

Bruce S. Klein, MD
Gerard B. Odell and Shirley S. Matchette Professor of Pediatrics
Professor of Internal Medicine and Medical Microbiology and Immunology
University of Wisconsin–Madison
Madison, Wisconsin

Stephan A. Kohlhoff, MD
Associate Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Medicine
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
New York, New York

Tobias R. Kollmann, MD, PhD
Professor of Pediatrics
Interim Head, Division of Infectious Diseases
University of British Columbia
Vancouver, BC, Canada

Poonum S. Korpe, MD
Assistant Scientist
Department of Epidemiology
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health
Baltimore, Maryland

Margaret Kosek, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of International Health
Johns Hopkins University Bloomberg School of Public Health
Baltimore, Maryland

Michael P. Koster, MD
Division of Pediatric Hospital Medicine
Hasbro Children's Hospital;
Associate Professor, Clinical Educator
Department of Pediatrics
Alpert Medical School of Brown University
Providence, Rhode Island

Peter J. Krause, MD
Senior Research Scientist
Yale School of Public Health
Yale School of Medicine
New Haven, Connecticut

Leonard R. Krilov, MD
Chairman, Department of Pediatrics
Chief, Pediatric Infectious Disease
Children's Medical Center
NYU Winthrop Hospital
Mineola, New York;
Professor of Pediatrics
State University of New York Stony Brook School of Medicine
Stony Brook, New York

Paul Krogstad, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Molecular and Medical Pharmacology
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Damian J. Krysan, MD, PHD
Associate Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Microbiology/Immunology
University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry
Rochester, New York

Edward Kuan, MD, MBA
Resident Physician
Department of Head and Neck Surgery
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Thomas Kuhls, MD
Department of Pediatrics
Norman Pediatric Associates
Norman, Oklahoma

Sarah M. Labuda, MD, MPH
Pediatric Infectious Diseases Fellow
Tulane School of Medicine
New Orleans, Louisiana

Paul M. Lantos, MD
Assistant Professor
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Division of General Internal Medicine
Duke University School of Medicine
Duke Global Health Institute
Durham, North Carolina

Timothy R. La Pine, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics and Pathology
University of Utah;
Director of Neonatology
St. Mark's Hospital
Salt Lake City, Utah

Suvi Heinimäki, PhD
Project Researcher
Vaccine Research Center
University of Tampere
Tampere, Finland

Jerome M. Larkin, MD
Division of Infectious Diseases
Rhode Island Hospital
Associate Professor, Clinical Educator
Department of Medicine
Alpert Medical School of Brown University
Providence, Rhode Island

Matthew B. Laurens, MD, MPH
Associate Professor
Institute for Global Health
University of Maryland School of Medicine
Baltimore, Maryland

Charles T. Leach, MD
Professor and Chief of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine/Children's Hospital of San Antonio
San Antonio, Texas

Amy Leber, PhD
Director, Clinical Microbiology and Immunoserology
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Nationwide Children's Hospital
Columbus, Ohio

Robert J. Leggiadro, MD
Adjunct Professor
Departments of Biology and Geography and the Environment
Villanova University
Villanova, Pennsylvania;
Adjunct Clinical Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Donald and Barbara Zucker School of Medicine at Hofstra/Northwell
Hempstead, New York;
Adjunct Attending Physician
General Pediatrics
Cohen Children's Medical Center
New Hyde Park, New York

Deborah Lehman, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Diana R. Lennon, MB CHB, FRACP
Professor of Population Health, Child, and Youth
Department of Pediatrics
University of Auckland;
Pediatrician in Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Starship and KidzFirst Children's Hospital
Auckland, New Zealand

Daniel H. Leung, MD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition
Baylor College of Medicine;
Director of Clinical Research
Medical Director, Viral Hepatitis Program
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Moise L. Levy, MD
Chief, Pediatric/Adolescent Dermatology
Dell Children's Medical Center;
Professor of Pediatrics and Medicine (Dermatology)
Dell Medical School
University of Texas
Austin, Texas;
Clinical Professor of Dermatology and Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

W. Matthew Linam, MD, MS
Medical Director of Infection Prevention and Hospital Epidemiology
Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Arkansas Children's Hospital
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences
Little Rock, Arkansas

Latania K. Logan, MD
Chief, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Rush University Medical Center
Associate Professor
Rush Medical College
Chicago, Illinois

Timothy E. Lotze, MD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics and Neurology
Division of Child Neurology
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Yalda C. Lucero, MD, PhD
Pediatric Gastroenterologist
Assistant Professor
Microbiology and Mycology Program
Institute of Biomedical Sciences
Faculty of Medicine
University of Chile and Northern Campus Department of Pediatrics
Santiago, Chile

Debra J. Lugo, MD
Fellow, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mattel Children's Hospital
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Berkley Luk, BSc
PhD Candidate
Program in Integrative Molecular and Biomedical Sciences
Baylor College of Medicine;
Department of Pathology
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Susan A. Maloney, MD, MHSc
Global Tuberculosis Coordinator
Division of Global Migration and Quarantine
National Center for Infectious Diseases
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Atlanta, Georgia

Michelle C. Mann, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Lucila Marquez, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics, Section of Infectious Diseases
Associate Medical Director, Infection Control and Prevention
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Kimberly C. Martin, DO, MPH
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of Oklahoma School of Community Medicine
Tulsa, Oklahoma

Laurene Mascola, MD, MPH, FAAP
Epidemiology Consultant
Acute Communicable Disease Program
Los Angeles County Department of Public Health
Los Angeles, California

Edward O. Mason Jr, PhD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Aldo Maspons, MD
CEO/Cofounder
VeMiDoc, LLC;
Maspons Pediatric Gastro
Pediatric Gastroenterology
El Paso, Texas

Marc A. Mazade, MD
Consultant
Pediatric Infectious Disease
Cook Children's Medical Center
Fort Worth, Texas

Holly E. McBride, MPH, MHS, PA-C
Physician Assistant
Internal Medicine
University of Colorado Health
Loveland, Colorado

Jonathan A. McCullers, MD
Chair
Department of Pediatrics
University of Tennessee Health Science Center
Memphis, Tennessee

Kenneth McIntosh, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Harvard Medical School;
Senior Physician
Department of Medicine
Children's Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

James E. McJunkin, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Department of Pediatrics
West Virginia University Health Sciences Center
Charleston, West Virginia

Kelly T. McKee Jr, MD, MPH
Vice President
Department of Public Health and Government Services
QuintilesIMS
Durham, North Carolina

Ross McKinney Jr, MD
Professor Emeritus
Department of Pediatrics
Duke University School of Medicine
Durham, North Carolina;
Chief Scientific Officer
Association of American Medical Colleges
Washington, DC

J. Chase McNeil, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Rojelio Mejia, MD
Assistant Professor of Infectious Diseases and Pediatrics
National School of Tropical Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Asuncion Mejias, MD, PhD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Ohio State University College of Medicine
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Infectious Diseases
Nationwide Children's Hospital
Columbus, Ohio

Maria José Soares Mendes Giannini, PhD
Full Professor
Department of Clinical Analysis
Laboratory of Clinical Mycology
São Paulo State University-UNESP
Araraquara, São Paulo, Brazil

Marian G. Michaels, MD, MPH
Professor
Department of Pediatrics and Surgery
University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of UPMC
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Ian C. Michelow, MD, DTM&H
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Hasbro Children's Hospital
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Alpert Medical School of Brown University
Providence, Rhode Island

Marjorie J. Miller, DrPH
Senior Specialist, Virology
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
UCLA Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

James N. Mills, PhD
Adjunct Faculty
Population Biology, Ecology, and Evolution Group
Emory University
Atlanta, Georgia

Leena B. Mithal, MD, MSCI
Attending Physician
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Ann & Robert H. Lurie Children's Hospital of Chicago;
Instructor, Department of Pediatrics
Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine
Chicago, Illinois

Kathryn S. Moffett, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Section Chief, Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
West Virginia University
Morgantown, West Virginia

Martin Montes, MD
Assistant Professor
Instituto de Medicina Tropica "Alexander von Humboldt"
Universidad Peruana Cayetano Heridia
Lima, Peru;
Assistant Professor
Department of Medicine
Division of Infectious Diseases
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Martha Muller, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of New Mexico
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Randy George Mungwira, MBBS, MPH
Blantyre Malaria Project
Blantyre, Malawi

James R. Murphy, PhD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Texas
Houston, Texas

Santhosh M. Nadipuram, MD
Postdoctoral Fellow
Department of Microbiology, Immunology, & Molecular Genetics
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

James P. Nataro, MD, PhD, MBA
Benjamin Armistead Shepherd Professor and Chair
Department of Pediatrics
University of Virginia School of Medicine;
Physician-in-Chief
University of Virginia Children's Hospital
Charlottesville, Virginia

Heather Needham, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
Section of Adolescent Medicine & Sports Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Karin Nielsen-Saines, MD, MPH
Professor of Clinical Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA;
Director, Center for Brazilian Studies
Los Angeles, California

Delma J. Nieves, MD
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of California–Irvine School of Medicine
Children's Hospital of Orange County
Orange, California

Richard Oberhelman, MD
Professor and Chair
Global Community Health & Behavioral Sciences
Tulane School of Public Health and Tropical Medicine;
Professor of Pediatrics
Tulane School of Medicine
New Orleans, Louisiana

Theresa J. Ochoa, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Instituto de Medicina Tropical "Alexander von Humboldt"
Universidad Peruana Cayetano Heredia
Lima, Peru;
Associate Professor
Division of Epidemiology, Human Genetics, and Environmental Sciences
Center for Infectious Diseases
School of Public Health
University of Texas Health Science Center at Houston
Houston, Texas

Rosemary M. Olivero, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Pediatrics and Human Development
Michigan State College of Human Medicine;
Attending Physician
Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Helen DeVos Children's Hospital
Grand Rapids, Michigan

Miguel O'Ryan, MD
Professor, Pediatric Infectious Disease
Millennium Institute of Immunology and Immunotherapy
Faculty of Medicine
Microbiology and Mycology Program
Institute of Biomedical Sciences
University of Chile
Santiago, Chile

Gary D. Overturf, MD
Professor Emeritus
Departments of Pediatrics and Pathology
University of New Mexico School of Medicine;
Medical Director, Infectious Diseases
TriCore Reference Laboratories
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Debra L. Palazzi, MD, MEd
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine;
Chief, Infectious Diseases Clinic
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Pia S. Pannaraj, MD, MPH
Associate Professor
Pediatrics and Molecular Microbiology and Immunology
University of Southern California/Children's Hospital Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Janak A. Patel, MD
Professor and Division Director
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Disease and Immunology
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Mary E. Paul, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Chief, Retrovirology and Global Health
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Stephen I. Pelton, MD
Professor of Pediatrics and Epidemiology
Department of Pediatrics
Boston University Schools of Medicine and Public Health;
Chief, Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Boston Medical Center
Boston, Massachusetts

Morgan A. Pence, PhD, D(ABMM)
Clinical Microbiologist
Department of Laboratory and Pathology
Cook Children's Medical Center
Fort Worth, Texas

John R. Perfect, MD
James B. Duke Professor of Medicine
Duke University Medical Center
Durham, North Carolina

C.J. Peters, MD
Department of Microbiology and Immunology
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

William A. Petri Jr, MD, PhD
Chief
Division of Infectious Disease and International Health
University of Virginia Health System;
Wade Hampton Frost Professor of Epidemiology
University of Virginia
Charlottesville, Virginia

Yen H. Pham, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition
Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Francisco P. Pinheiro, MD
Department of Arbovirus
Instituto Evandro Chagas
FNS
Ministry of Health
Belem, Brazil

Benjamin A. Pinsky, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Departments of Pathology and Medicine (Infectious Diseases)
Stanford University School of Medicine;
Medical Director
Clinical Virology Laboratory
Stanford Health Care and Stanford Children's Health
Stanford, California

Alice Pong, MD
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of California–San Diego;
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Rady Children's Hospital San Diego
San Diego, California

Eric A. Porsch, PhD
Department of Pediatrics
Children's Hospital of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Joan S. Purcell, MD
Adolescent Medicine and Pediatrics
STEP Pediatrics
Woodlands, Texas

Natalie M. Quanquin, MD, PhD
Research Fellow
Department of Microbiology, Immunology, and Molecular Genetics
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Kevin K. Quinn, MD
Physician
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Southern California Permanente Medical Group
Fontana, California

Susan M. Abdel-Rahman, PharmD
Chief, Section of Therapeutic Innovation
Clinical Pharmacology, Medical Toxicology & Therapeutic Innovation
Children's Mercy–Kansas City;
Professor of Pediatrics
University of Missouri–Kansas City School of Medicine
Kansas City, Missouri

Octavio Ramilo, MD
Henry G. Cramblett Chair in Medicine
Professor of Pediatrics
Ohio State University College of Medicine
Department of Pediatrics
Chief, Division of Infectious Diseases
Nationwide Children's Hospital
Columbus, Ohio

Ramya Ramraj, MD, MBBS
Affiliate Assistant Professor
Oregon Health and Sciences University;
Attending Pediatrician and Pediatric Gastroenterologist
Doernbecher Children's Hospital and Kaiser NW Permanente
Portland, Oregon

Paula A. Revell, PhD
Assistant Professor
Departments of Pathology and Immunology and Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Director of Microbiology and Virology
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Anne W. Rimoin, PhD, MPH
Associate Professor
Department of Epidemiology
UCLA Fielding School of Public Health
Los Angeles, California

José R. Romero, MD
Horace C. Cabe Professor of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences;
Director, Pediatric Infectious Diseases Section
Department of Pediatrics
Arkansas Children's Hospital;
Director, Clinical Trials Research
Arkansas Children's Hospital Research Institute
Little Rock, Arkansas

Lawrence Ross, MD, DTM&H
Professor Emeritus
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of Los Angeles
Keck School of Medicine at the University of Southern California
Los Angeles, California

Anne H. Rowley, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics and Microbiology/Immunology
Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine
Attending Physician, Division of Infectious Diseases
Department of Pediatrics
Ann & Robert H. Lurie Children's Hospital of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

Charles E. Rupprecht, VMD, MS, PhD
Chief Executive Officer
LYSSA, LLC
Atlanta, Georgia

Xavier Saez-Llorens, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Head of Infectious Diseases
Hospital del Niño "Dr. José Renán Esquivel"
Distinguished Investigator, SNI, Senacyt
Panama City, Panama

Julia Shaklee Sammons, MD, MSCE
Assistant Professor of Clinical Pediatrics
Division of Infectious Diseases
Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania;
Medical Director and Hospital Epidemiologist
Infection Prevention and Control
Children's Hospital of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Pablo Sánchez, MD
Prinicipal Investigator
Center for Perinatal Research
Fellow, Infectious Diseases
Fellow, Neonatology
Nationwide Children's Hospital
Columbus, Ohio

Linette Sande, MD
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Loma Linda University;
Attending Physician
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Loma Linda University Children's Hospital
Loma Linda, California

Javier Santisteban-Ponce, MD
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Disease Unit
Department of Pediatrics
Hospital Nacional Edgardo Rebagliati Martins-EsSalud;
Lima, Peru

Laura A. Sass, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Eastern Virginia Medical School;
Attending Physician
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Medical Director, Infection Prevention and Control, Antiobiotic Stewardship
Children's Hospital of The King's Daughters
Norfolk, Virginia

Stephen J. Scholand, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Medicine
Frank Netter School of Medicine
Quinnipiac University
North Haven, Connecticut

Danica J. Schulte, MD
Assistant Professor in Residence
Department of Pediatrics
University of California–Los Angeles;
Assistant Professor
Departments of Pediatrics, Pediatric Infectious Diseases, Immunology and Allergy
Cedars-Sinai Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

Jennifer E. Schuster, MD, MSCI
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Children's Mercy Kansas City
Kansas City, Missouri

Gordon E. Schutze, MD, FAAP
Professor of Pediatrics
Executive Vice Chairman
Martin I. Lorin, MD, Endowed Chair in Medical Education
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine;
Vice President, International Programs
Baylor International Pediatric AIDS Initiative at Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Patrick C. Seed, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics/Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Duke University School of Medicine;
Assistant Professor
Department of Molecular Genetics and Microbiology
Duke University School of Medicine
Durham, North Carolina

Jose A. Serpa, MD, MS
Associate Professor
Department of Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Samir S. Shah, MD, MSCE
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Cincinnati College of Medicine;
Director, Division of Hospital Medicine
Attending Physician
Divisions of Infectious Diseases and Hospital Medicine
James M. Ewell Endowed Chair
Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center
Cincinnati, Ohio

Eugene D. Shapiro, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics, Epidemiology of Microbial Diseases, and Investigative Medicine
Yale University
New Haven, Connecticut

Nina L. Shapiro, MD
Professor, Department of Head and Neck Surgery
Director, Division of Pediatric Otolaryngology
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

William T. Shearer, MD, PhD
Professor of Pediatrics and Pathology and Immunology
Distinguished Service Professor
Baylor College of Medicine;
Allergy and Immunology Service
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Robyn Shimizu-Cohen, CLS(ASCP)
Specialist
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Stanford T. Shulman, MD
Chief Emeritus, Division of Infectious Diseases
Ann & Robert H. Lurie Children's Hospital of Chicago
Virginia H. Rogers Professor of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine
Chicago, Illinois

Kareem W. Shehab, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Section of Infectious Disease
University of Arizona
Tucson, Arizona

Ziad M. Shehab, MD
Professor of Pediatrics and Pathology
University of Arizona
Tucson, Arizona

Constantine Simos, DMD
Attending Surgeon
Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery
Robert Wood Johnson University Hospital
Saint Peter's University Hospital
New Brunswick, New Jersey;
Assistant Clinical Professor
Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery
Columbia University College of Dental Medicine
New York, New York

Michael A. Smit, MD, MSPH
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Hasbro Children's Hospital
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Alpert Medical School of Brown University
Providence, Rhode Island

P. Brian Smith, MD, MPH, MHS
Professor of Pediatrics
Duke University Medical Center
Duke Clinical Research Institute
Durham, North Carolina

Priya R. Soni, MD
Fellow, Pediatric Infectious Disease
Mattel Children's Hospital
University of California–Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Sunil K. Sood, MBBS, DCH, MD
Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Family Medicine
Hofstra Northwell School of Medicine
Hempstead, New York;
Chair of Pediatrics
Southside Hospital, Northwell Health
Bay Shore, New York;
Attending Physician
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Cohen Children's Medical Center
New Hyde Park, New York

Mary Allen Staat, MD, MPH
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Cincinnati College of Medicine;
Director
International Adoption Center
Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center
Cincinnati, Ohio

Damien Stark, MSc, PhD, FASM, FACTM
Associate, Department of Medical and Molecular Biosciences
University of Technology Sydney
Broadway, NSW, Australia;
Senior Hospital Scientist
Department of Microbiology
St. Vincent's Hospital
Darlinghurst, NSW, Australia

Jeffrey R. Starke, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Victoria A. Statler, MD, MSc
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of Louisville
Louisville, Kentucky

Barbara W. Stechenberg, MD
Pediatric Infectious Diseases Specialist
Department of Pediatrics
Baystate Children's Hospital
Springfield, Massachusetts;
Professor Emerita of Pediatrics
Department of Pediatrics
Tufts University School of Medicine
Boston, Massachusetts

William J. Steinbach, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Professor in Molecular Genetics and Microbiology
Chief, Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Director, Duke Pediatric Immunocompromised Host Program
Director, International Pediatric Fungal Network
Duke University School of Medicine
Durham, North Carolina

Joseph W. St. Geme III, MD
Professor of Pediatrics and Microbiology
Chair, Department of Pediatrics
Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania;
Chair, Department of Pediatrics
Physician-in-Chief
Children's Hospital of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Jeffrey Suen, MD
Private Practice
Bakersfield, California

Lillian Sung, MD, PhD
Professor
Division of Haematology/Oncology
Hospital for Sick Children
Toronto, ON, Canada

Douglas S. Swanson, MD
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Children's Mercy Kansas City;
Associate Professor of Pediatrics
University of Missouri–Kansas City
Kansas City, Missouri

Tina Q. Tan, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Feinberg School of Medicine
Northwestern University;
Infectious Diseases Attending Physician
Department of Pediatrics
Ann & Robert H. Lurie Children's Hospital
Chicago, Illinois

Ruston S. Taylor, PharmD
Department of Pharmacy
Legacy Community Health
Houston, Texas

Michael A. Tolle, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Retrovirology and Global Health Section
International Pediatrics AIDS Initiative (BIPAI)
Baylor College of Medicine Children's Foundation
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas;
Tanzania Buganda Medical Centre
Mwanza, Tanzania

Philip Toltzis, MD
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Rainbow Babies and Children's Hospital
Cleveland, Ohio

Stuart R. Tomko, MD
Division of Child Neurology
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Michael F. Tosi, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mount Sinai School of Medicine
New York, New York

Leidy J. Tovar Padua, MD
Fellow
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Mattel Children's Hospital of UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Amelia P.A. Travassos da Rosa, BSc
Research Associate
Center for Tropical Diseases
Department of Pathology
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Theodore F. Tsai, MD, MPH
Senior Vice President, Scientific Affairs
Novartis Vaccines
Cambridge, Massachusetts

Andrew M. Vahabzadeh-Hagh, MD
Resident
Department of Head and Neck Surgery
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Jorge J. Velarde, MD, PhD
Instructor
Division of Infectious Diseases
Boston Children's Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Jesus G. Vallejo, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

John A. Vanchiere, MD, PhD
Professor and Chief
Section of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center
Shreveport, Louisiana

Robert S. Venick, MD
Associate Professor
Departments of Pediatrics and Surgery
David Geffin School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Sanjay Verma, MBBS, MD
Additional Professor of Pediatrics
Advanced Pediatrics Centre
Postgraduate Institute of Medical Education and Research
Chandigarh, India

James Versalovic, MD, PhD
Pathologist-in-Chief
Department of Pathology
Texas Children's Hospital;
Milton J. Finegold Professor
Department of Pathology and Immunology
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Timo Vesikari, MD, PhD
Director
Vaccine Research Center
University of Tampere
Tampere, Finland

Ellen R. Wald, MD
Chair, Department of Pediatrics
University of Wisconsin School of Medicine & Public Health;
Pediatrician-in-Chief
American Family Children's Hospital
Madison, Wisconsin

Thomas J. Walsh, MD
Director, Transplantation-Oncology Infectious Diseases Program
Weill Cornell Medical Center of Cornell University
New York, New York

Mark A. Ward, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Rachel L. Wattier, MD, MHS
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of California–San Francisco
San Francisco, California

Sing Sing Way, MD, PhD
Professor of Pediatrics
Pauline and Lawson Reed Chair
Division of Infectious Diseases
Cincinnati Children's Hospital
University of Cincinnati College of Medicine
Cincinnati, Ohio

Jill Weatherhead, MD
Assistant Professor of Infectious Diseases and Pediatrics
National School of Tropical Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Michelle Weinberg, MD, MPH
Medical Epidemiologist
Immigrant, Refugee, and Migrant Health Branch
Division of Global Migration and Quarantine
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Atlanta, Georgia

Nicholas Weinberg, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Emergency Medicine
Geisel School of Medicine
Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center
Hanover, New Hampshire

Melanie Wellington, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Rochester Medical Center
Rochester, New York

Robert C. Welliver Sr, MD
Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma;
Emeritus Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
SUNY at Buffalo and Children's Hospital
Buffalo, New York

J. Gary Wheeler, MD, MPS
Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Infectious Diseases
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences
Little Rock, Arkansas

A. Clinton White Jr, MD
Professor, Division of Infectious Disease
Department of Internal Medicine
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Suzanne Whitworth, MD
Medical Director
Department of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Cook Children's Healthcare System
Fort Worth, Texas

Bernhard L. Wiedermann, MD, MA
Professor
Department of Pediatrics
George Washington University School of Medicine and Health Sciences;
Attending Physician
Division of Infectious Diseases
Children's National Health System
Washington, DC

John V. Williams, MD
Professor and Chief
Pediatric Infectious Diseases
Henry L. Hillman Chair in Pediatric Immunology
Children's Hospital of Pittsburgh of UPMC
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Natalie M. Williams-Bouyer, PhD, D(ABMM)
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology
Associate Director, Division of Clinical Microbiology
University of Texas Medical Branch;
Clinical Consultant, Clinical Laboratory Services
Shriners Hospitals for Children
Galveston, Texas

Charles R. Woods Jr, MD, MS
Professor and Vice Chair for Faculty Development
Department of Pediatrics
University of Louisville School of Medicine
Louisville, Kentucky

Terry W. Wright, PhD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics
University of Rochester Medical Center
Rochester, New York

Nave Yeganeh, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Pediatrics
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Los Angeles, California

Edward J. Young, MD
Professor of Medicine
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Ramia Zakhour, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Pediatrics and Adolescent Medicine
Division of Pediatric Infectious Diseases
American University of Beirut
Beirut, Lebanon

Theoklis Zaoutis, MD, MSCE
Professor of Pediatrics and Epidemiology
Perelman School of Medicine at the University of Pennsylvania;
Associate Chief
Division of Infectious Diseases
Children's Hospital of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Preface

Morbidity and mortality rates related to infectious diseases decreased dramatically during the first half of the 20th century in the developed world because of major improvements in public health (e.g., clean water, adequate sanitation, and vector control) and personal health. Further major reductions occurred in the second half of that century following the introduction of antimicrobial therapy, as well as active and passive immunization efforts. Despite these advances, infectious diseases in the developed world remain the leading cause of morbidity in infants and children in the 21st century. Children in the United States continue to experience three to nine respiratory infections and one to three gastrointestinal illnesses annually, requiring visits to physicians that outnumber the visits made for the purpose of well-child care. Infectious diseases are also the most common cause of school absenteeism.

Children in low and middle income countries also experience high rates of respiratory and gastrointestinal infections, which are often more severe and more frequent than those in children in the developed world. In addition, in the developing world there are great morbidity and mortality due to parasitic and vector-borne diseases. Also of importance are "spillover" infectious diseases such as Ebola, which because of increased urbanization resulted in an extensive epidemic in three African countries in 2014–15. In addition, mosquito-borne diseases such as Zika and Chikungunya have increased in prevalence in the Americas.

In more recent years, the emergence of resistance to multiple antibiotics by a large number of bacterial microorganisms (e.g., community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*) has contributed to this infection-related morbidity and mortality, as have new infectious agents (e.g., SARS and MERS coronaviruses) and changes in the clinical manifestations and severity of established infectious agents (e.g., enterovirus 71, swine influenza).

The first edition of *Textbook of Pediatric Infectious Diseases* was written because Drs. Feigin and Cherry and many of their colleagues were concerned that no single reference text existed that comprehensively covered infectious diseases in children and adolescents. With each subsequent edition, including this one, the goal has been to provide comprehensive coverage of all subjects pertinent to the study of infectious diseases in children. Any attempt to summarize our present understanding of infectious diseases for serious students of the subject is a formidable task. In many areas, new information continues to accrue so rapidly that material becomes dated before it can appear in a text of this magnitude. Nevertheless, in this edition the editors and their author colleagues have endeavored to provide the most comprehensive and up-to-date discussion of pediatric infectious diseases ever compiled. This new edition is available online as well as in print. Purchasers can access the online version by registering their personal identification number (PIN) (found on the inside front cover of the book) at expertconsult.inkling.com. Online access includes not only fully searchable text, photos, illustrations, and tables, but also references linked to PubMed.

To provide a text as comprehensive and authoritative as possible, we, the editors, have enlisted contributions from a large number of individuals whose collective expertise is responsible for whatever success we may have had in meeting our objective. We offer our most profound appreciation to the 307 fellow contributors from nearly 100 universities or institutions in 18 countries for their professional expertise and devoted scholarship. Their cooperation and willingness to work with us leave us deeply in their debt. Of note is the fact that 10 authors (Carol Baker, Ken Boyer, Jim Cherry, Morven Edwards, Chuck Grose, Scott Halstead, Maggie Hammerschlag, Shelly Kaplan, Ed Mason, and Barbara Stechenberg) have contributed to all eight editions of *Textbook of Pediatric Infectious Diseases*.

Once again, infectious diseases are discussed according to organ systems that may be affected, as well as individually by microorganisms. In all sections in which diseases related to specific agents are discussed, emphasis has been placed, to the greatest extent possible, on the specificity of clinical manifestations that may be related to the organism causing the disease. Detailed information regarding the best means to establish a diagnosis and explicit recommendations for therapy are provided. In the present era of instant information, we have noted that historical perspectives relating to disease categories, as well as specific agents, are ignored. Because history is an important teacher, we have retained relevant historical details in this eighth edition.

Throughout the 37 years and eight-edition history of the *Textbook of Pediatric Infectious Diseases,* a number of classic chapters exist (e.g., measles, rubella, enteroviruses, and mycoplasma infections). The data in these chapters are unavailable in any other single-source publication.

The entire text of this eighth edition has been revised extensively. The seventh edition contained almost 4000 pages even though we included only new references in the print edition, which is close to the maximum that can be included in a two-volume book. Therefore, with this eighth edition, we were faced with a major dilemma: specifically, how to include new important material that had become available since the seventh edition but not to substantially increase the size of the book. We approached this dilemma in two ways. One problem in previous editions was redundancy, which we have addressed by combining information in some previous separate chapters into more concise single presentations and by shortening some chapters. The second way, which we introduced in the last edition, is to print only new references. The electronic version of the text contains all references.

This edition continues the format that was initiated in the fourth edition, in that infections with specific microorganisms have been organized to provide appropriate emphasis on the common features that may relate specific microorganisms to one another. Thus, all gram-positive coccal organisms are presented sequentially and are followed by gram-negative cocci, gram-positive bacilli, enterobacteria, gram-negative coccobacilli, Treponemataceae, anaerobic bacteria, and so forth. In addition, special sections of the text have been devoted to discussions of each of the following: molecular determinants of microbial pathogenesis; immunologic and phagocytic responses to infection; metabolic response of the host to infections; interaction of infection and nutrition; pathogenesis and treatment of fever; the human microbiome; epidemiology and biostatistics of infectious diseases; infections of the compromised host; Kawasaki disease; chronic fatigue syndrome; international travel issues for children; infectious disease problems of international adoptees and refugees; nosocomial infections; prevention and control of infections in hospitalized children; pharmacology and pharmacokinetics of antibacterial, antiviral, antifungal, and antiparasitic agents; immunomodulating agents; active and passive immunizing agents; public health considerations; infections in day care environments; and use of the bacteriology, mycology, parasitology, virology, and serology laboratories. The section on infections in the compromised host has again been expanded. This expansion has been necessitated by the large number of children, particularly transplant recipients, who have many infectious disease problems and constitute a large part of the consulting practice of many pediatric infectious disease physicians.

With some sadness, we have retained a section on bioterrorism, which is necessitated by the current state of world affairs. The section on immunomodulating agents and their potential use in the treatment of infectious diseases has been expanded because information on this subject has become more extensive since the publication of the last edition. We have also expanded the section on Ebola virus and included a new chapter on Zika virus.

This project could not have been brought to fruition without the help and assistance of many people whose names do not appear in the text. No words are sufficient to adequately convey our gratitude appropriately; we hope that they know they have our heartfelt thanks.

We would like to single out certain individuals for specific mention. First and foremost, we convey our appreciation to Laura Wennstrom Sheehan for the many hours she devoted to this edition. In her spare time between her position as Manager of Research Administration for the UCLA Department of Family Medicine and raising her young daughter, she coordinated the overall process of moving the book forward. She tended to numerous details relating to copyediting, transcribing, references, timing, and communication between the editors and Elsevier. Her expertise in EndNote was invaluable to the authors, editors, and publishing team for the organization of countless references throughout this edition. We are extremely grateful to have her as a part of our team. We would also like to acknowledge the hard work of Jordan Mann who assisted Laura throughout this process.

The following students at UCLA played a key role in processing chapters and in particular helping with references: Lauren M. Nguyen, David Dang, and Jewel Powe. We would also like to thank Nathaniel Wilder Wolf at Baylor who coordinated all the parasite chapters.

Of course this eighth edition of *Textbook of Pediatric Infectious Diseases* would not have been possible without Elsevier. We have been particularly fortunate to have been able to work with Kate Dimock, Executive Content Strategist, Clinical Solutions at Elsevier throughout the whole process relating to this eighth edition. In addition, the initial planning contribution by Lauren Elise Boyle, Content Development Specialist, was invaluable. This was followed-up by the day-to-day contributions of Margaret Nelson, also a Content Development Specialist at Elsevier. Margaret kept everyone on track in meeting deadlines.

Finally, we thank the Baylor College of Medicine and Texas Children's Hospital in Houston, Texas, the David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA and the Mattel Children's Hospital UCLA in Los Angeles, California, and Duke University School of Medicine in Durham, North Carolina for providing an environment that is supportive of intellectual pursuits.

James D. Cherry, MD
Gail J. Harrison, MD
Sheldon L. Kaplan, MD
William J. Steinbach, MD
Peter J. Hotez, MD

1 Molecular Determinants of Microbial Pathogenesis

David A. Hunstad • Ravi Jhaveri • Audrey R. Odom John • Joseph W. St. Geme III

Despite the availability of a wide variety of antimicrobial agents and expansion of vaccination programs, infectious diseases remain a leading cause of childhood morbidity and mortality worldwide. A number of factors contribute to the increasing importance of infectious agents: rates of antimicrobial resistance continue to rise, global travel has become routine, and the number of individuals with altered immunity has increased. Furthermore, in recent years, microorganisms have been implicated in diseases previously considered noninfectious, and a variety of new, emerging, and reemerging pathogens have been recognized.

Pathogens are defined as microorganisms that are capable of causing disease. However, not all pathogens are equal with respect to their pathogenic potential (i.e., their virulence). Many pathogens are, in fact, commensal organisms that live in harmony with their host under most conditions, causing disease only when normal immune mechanisms are disrupted or absent. Other pathogens produce disease even in the setting of intact host defenses and almost always cause symptoms.

For a given microbe, pathogenic potential is often determined by the genomic content and regulation of virulence-associated genes. Some bacterial species are capable of natural transformation and readily acquire fragments of DNA from other organisms, thus expanding or altering their genetic composition, occasionally with consequences related to virulence or antimicrobial resistance. A number of microorganisms carry virulence-associated genes on mobile genetic elements, including plasmids, transposons, and bacteriophages. These elements may equip the organism with genetic information that facilitates rapid adaptation to an unfavorable or changing environment. Comparison of genomes from pathogenic and nonpathogenic bacteria within a single genus or species has led to the identification of *pathogenicity islands*, which are large blocks of chromosomal DNA that are present in pathogens and absent from related nonpathogens. These blocks are flanked by insertion sequences or repeat elements and differ in nucleotide composition relative to the surrounding genome, suggesting acquisition by horizontal exchange. Pathogenicity islands in bacteria encode a variety of virulence factors, including protein secretion systems, secreted effector molecules, adhesins, and regulatory proteins. In an analogous way, some viral pathogens such as influenza virus are capable of exchanging nucleic acid segments with other viruses, leading to changes in pathogenicity, host tropism, and transmissibility.

To be successful, a pathogen must enter the host, occupy an appropriate niche, and then multiply. Sometimes the pathogen will induce damage to the host and then spread to other tissues, either near the initial site of infection or more distant. Often the pathogen will stop short of causing death to the host, maintaining latent infection or producing symptoms such as cough or diarrhea that facilitate spread to another host. This chapter addresses several key steps in the pathogenic process, each illustrated with examples of pathogens and paradigms of relevance to infectious diseases in children.

COLONIZATION

Most bacterial infections begin with microbial colonization of a host surface, typically the skin, the respiratory tract, the gastrointestinal tract, or the genitourinary tract. Although colonization is not sufficient for an organism to produce disease, it is a necessary prerequisite. The process of bacterial colonization requires specialized microbial factors, called adhesins, that promote adherence to host structures and enable these organisms to overcome local mechanical defenses such as mucociliary function, peristalsis, and urinary flow. The cognate receptors for these interactions are generally either carbohydrate or protein structures, in some cases expressed on host cells and in other instances present in mucosal secretions or in submucosal tissue.

Pilus Adhesins

Perhaps most common among bacterial adhesins are hairlike fibers called pili (also called fimbriae). Pili are heteropolymeric protein structures comprised largely of a major subunit usually ranging in size from 15 to 25 kDa. Because of their size and morphology, most pili can be visualized by negative-staining transmission electron microscopy.

The prototype example among adhesive pili is the P (or Pap) pilus, which is expressed by uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* (UPEC) and has been strongly associated with pyelonephritis. P pili recognize globoseries glycolipids, which are host molecules that are characterized by a core structure consisting of Gal-α1,4-Gal. The globoseries glycolipids are especially abundant in renal epithelium,[25] thus accounting for the predilection of P-piliated *E. coli* to adhere to kidney tissue and cause pyelonephritis. Type 1 pili are analogous fibers expressed by UPEC and bind mannosylated uroplakin proteins in the mammalian bladder to initiate cystitis.[153] As shown in Fig. 1.1, P pili are composite structures and consist of two subassemblies, including a thick rod that emanates from the bacterial surface and a thin tip fibrillum that extends distally.[173,270] The pilus rod is a right-handed helical cylinder and is composed of repeating PapA subunits, whereas the tip fibrillum has an open helical configuration and contains mostly repeating PapE subunits. The two subassemblies are joined to each other by the PapK adaptor protein. PapG contains the adhesive moiety and is located at the distal end of the tip fibrillum, joined to PapE by the PapF adaptor.[150]

P pili are assembled through a canonical process termed the *chaperone-usher pathway* that involves a periplasmic chaperone (PapD) and an outer membrane usher (PapC) (see Fig. 1.1).[65,174] Subunit proteins (e.g., PapA) are translated in the bacterial cytoplasm, enter the periplasm through the inner membrane Sec machinery, and are stabilized by interaction with the chaperone, which ferries them to the usher. Extrusion of the nascent fiber is controlled by a "plug" domain in the usher pore; because the periplasm is devoid of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the assembly process is energetically driven by the entropically favorable final conformation of the incorporated subunits.[189,259] More than 30 different bacterial adhesive structures are assembled via this chaperone-usher pathway, with distinct PapD-like chaperones and PapC-like ushers. The PapD-like chaperones can be divided into two distinct subfamilies based on conserved structural differences that occur near the subunit binding site.[138] One subfamily is involved in the assembly of rod-like pili similar to P pili, whereas the second subfamily participates in the biogenesis of more atypical filamentous structures, such as Caf1 of *Yersinia pestis* (the plague bacterium), which forms an amorphous "mat" on the bacterial surface. Thus the nature of the chaperone is directly correlated with the architecture of the adhesive appendage that it helps to assemble.[285]

Type 4 pili represent a second class of pili and are distinguished by a methylated first amino acid (usually phenylalanine); a short, positively charged leader sequence; a conserved hydrophobic N-terminal domain; and a tendency to form bundle-like structures. Type 4 pili have been identified in a number of gram-negative bacterial pathogens, including *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, N. meningitidis,* enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC), *Vibrio cholerae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Kingella kingae, Eikenella corrodens, Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Moraxella* species.[32,99,193,208,250,256,272,296,323] Although the mechanism of

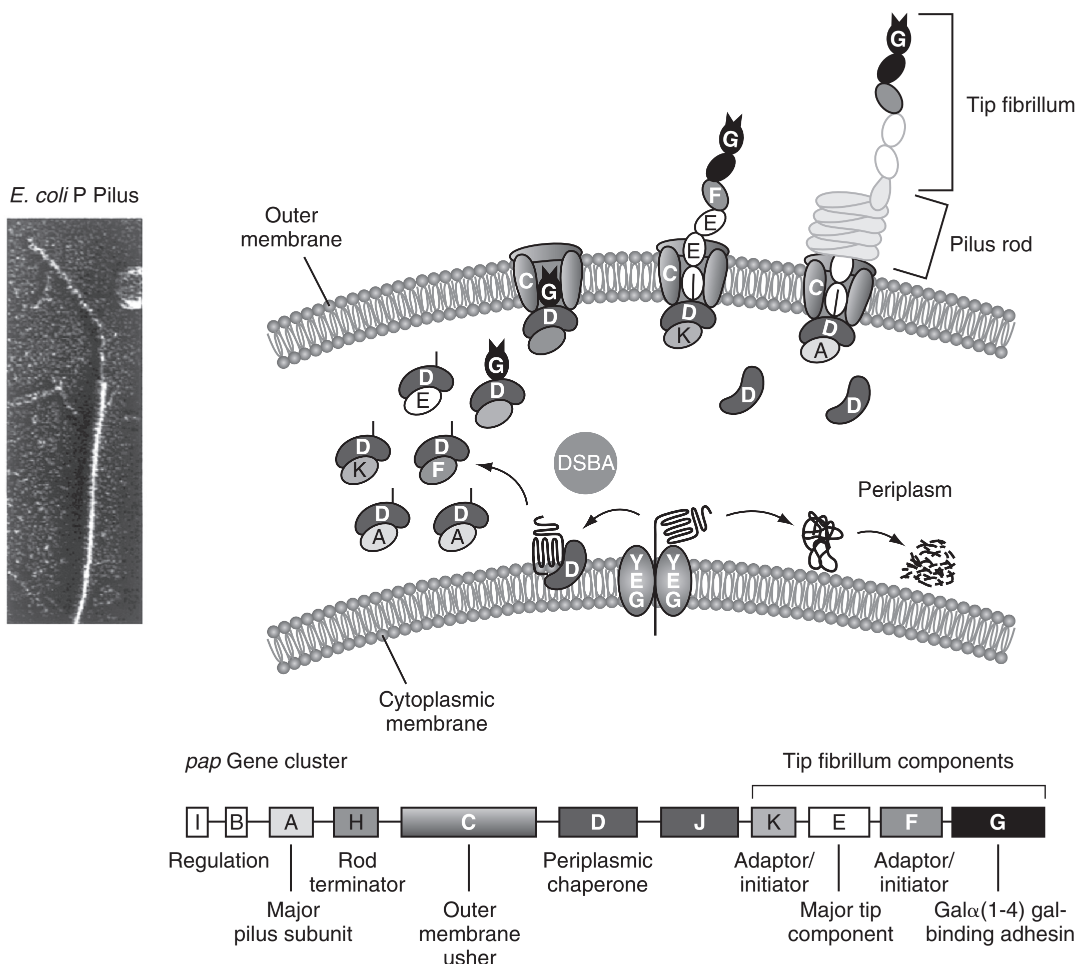


FIG. 1.1 Biogenesis and structure of *Escherichia coli* P pili. The *pap* gene cluster and the function of each of the gene products are indicated in the lower portion of the figure. Nascent pilin subunits are complexed with the PapD chaperone and added to the base of the developing pilus via the PapC usher. The mature pilus rod is composed of repeating units of PapA; the tip fibrillum contains the adhesin PapG. The ultrastructure of the pilus is shown in the electron micrograph at the left side of the figure. (Courtesy S.J. Hultgren and F.J. Sauer.)

assembly of type 4 pili is still being elucidated, existing data suggest that the process is complex. For example, between 20 and 40 gene products are required for the assembly of *P. aeruginosa* type 4 pili, and at least 15 plasmid-encoded proteins are involved in the biogenesis of EPEC type 4 pili.[127,294] Based on studies of *P. aeruginosa,* EPEC, *Neisseria,* and *V. cholerae*, the presence of an inner membrane prepilin peptidase appears to be a general prerequisite for type 4 pilus biogenesis.[161,176,226] Type 4 pili are often glycosylated, with carbohydrate decoration affecting function in at least some cases and perhaps serving to obscure antigenic epitopes.[33,190,278,319] However, despite marked differences in the assembly pathways for type 4 pili and P pili, shared structural themes exist. For example, gonococcal type 4 pili are composed predominantly of PilE structural subunits polymerized into a helical rod.[235] A minor phase-variable adhesive protein called PilC is displayed at the tip of gonococcal pili and is essential for pilus-mediated binding to epithelial cells.[154,267] These observations suggest that *N. gonorrhoeae* pili may be composite structures with a tip-associated adhesin, analogous to P pili and other pili assembled by the chaperone-usher pathway.

Although adhesive pili are more prevalent in gram-negative bacteria, they are also found in some gram-positive species. One example is *Streptococcus parasanguinis*, an oral pathogen and a member of the *S. sanguinis* family. This organism binds to calcium phosphate (the primary mineral component of tooth enamel) and also to other oral bacteria, epithelial cells, platelets, and fibronectin. Several adhesins mediate these binding functions, including pili referred to as *long fimbriae*. Based on studies of *S. parasanguinis* strain FW213, long fimbriae are fashioned primarily from Fap1, a 200-kDa protein that includes an unusually long (50 amino acids) signal sequence and a cell-wall sorting signal typical of other gram-positive bacterial surface proteins.[338,339] Specific glycosylation of Fap1 appears critical to the adhesive function of this fimbrial protein.[27,293,337] Interestingly, similar to gram-negative bacterial pili, long fimbriae appear to have a composite structure with a pilus tip. The tip contains an additional adhesin called FimA, which in purified form is capable of blocking bacterial adherence to saliva-coated hydroxyapatite.[81,231] In work by Burnette-Curley and coworkers, disruption of the *fimA* gene resulted in a 7- to 20-fold reduction in the incidence of endocarditis after intravenous inoculation of rats.[29] Other gram-positive organisms capable of expressing pili include *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (a common cause of respiratory tract and invasive disease),[11,216] *Streptococcus agalactiae* (group B streptococcus; a common cause of neonatal pneumonia, sepsis, and meningitis),[73,264] and *Enterococcus faecalis* (a cause of endocarditis and urinary tract infections).[215,277]

Nonpilus Adhesins

Beyond pili, a variety of nonpilus adhesins exist. In most cases, nonpilus adhesins are surface-expressed monomeric or oligomeric proteins, although isolated examples of carbohydrate- and lipid-containing adhesive structures have been identified. In general, these molecules are more difficult to visualize by electron microscopy, reflecting their smaller size. Similar to pili, for the most part nonpilus adhesins can be classified according to their mechanism of secretion and presentation on the bacterial surface.

Among the best-characterized bacterial nonpilus adhesins is filamentous hemagglutinin (FHA), a surface protein expressed by *Bordetella pertussis* and other *Bordetella* species. The export of FHA to the surface of the organism occurs via the so-called two-partner secretion (TPS) *pathway*, a conserved strategy in which a secreted protein (TpsA) interacts with a cognate outer membrane transporter (TpsB).[128] In *B. pertussis*, the TpsA-type protein FHA is transported by a TpsB-type outer membrane protein called FhaC, which has β-barrel pore-forming properties and facilitates translocation of FHA across the outer membrane.[333] Homologous TpsB proteins in other species export the hemolysins of *Serratia marcescens, Proteus mirabilis*, and *Haemophilus ducreyi*; the *H. influenzae* heme:hemopexin binding protein (HxuA); and the *H. influenzae* HMW1 and HMW2 adhesins, among others.[9,46,234,249,287,316] The crystal structure of FhaC reveals a 16-stranded β-barrel that is occluded by an N-terminal α-helix and an extracellular loop and a periplasmic module composed of two polypeptide-transport-associated (POTRA) domains. Functional studies have demonstrated that the N terminus of FHA interacts with the FhaC POTRA 1 domain, illuminating what appears to be a general feature of interactions between TpsA and TpsB proteins.[39,104]

Examination of purified FHA by transmission electron microscopy and circular dichroism spectroscopy showed that the FHA molecule is 50 nm in length and adopts the shape of a horseshoe nail. It has a globular head, a 37-nm-long shaft that averages 4 nm in width but tapers slightly from the head end, and a small flexible tail (Fig. 1.2).[157,188] In the crystal structure of the N terminus of FHA (the so-called TPS domain that interacts with FhaC), a series of 19-residue repeat motifs form a β-helix that is central to the overall structure of full-length FHA.[40] Consistent with its large size, FHA contains at least five separate binding domains, four of which have been localized. The region involved in adherence to sulfated saccharides has been mapped to the N terminus of the FHA molecule.[206] Sulfated saccharides such as heparin and heparan sulfate are a major component of mucus and extracellular matrix in the respiratory tract and are also found on the surface of epithelial cells.[195,342] The region that recognizes lactosylceramides and promotes adherence to ciliated respiratory epithelial cells and macrophages has been localized to amino acids 1141 to 1279 (the carbohydrate recognition domain).[251] An arginine-glycine-aspartic acid (RGD) tripeptide is located at amino acids 1097 to 1099 and interacts with leukocyte response integrin (LRI), a leukocyte integrin that stimulates upregulation of complement receptor type 3 (CR3).[146] The C terminus of mature FHA has been demonstrated to interact with epithelial cells and macrophage-like cells and appears to modulate the immune response to *Bordetella* infection.[155] Finally, FHA recognizes CR3 (CD11b/CD18), allowing organisms to be ingested by macrophages without stimulating an oxidative burst.[258,336] The location of the CR3-binding domain is currently unknown.

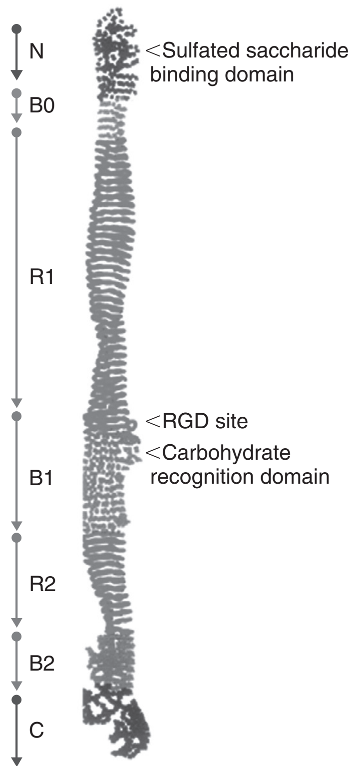


FIG. 1.2 Ribbon representation model structure of filamentous hemagglutinin from *Bordetella pertussis*. There are five regions that are assigned β-helical coils, designated B0, R1, B1, R2, and B2. The N terminus of the protein is designated with "N," and the C terminus of the protein is designated with "C." The locations of the sulfated saccharide binding domain, the carbohydrate recognition domain, and the RGD tripeptide are noted. (From Kajava AV, Cheng N, Cleaver R, et al. Beta-helix model for the filamentous haemagglutinin adhesin of *Bordetella pertussis* and related bacterial secretory proteins. *Mol Microbiol.* 2001;42:279–92.)

A growing number of nonpilus adhesins belong to the so-called autotransporter family. These proteins are synthesized as precursor proteins with three functional domains, including an N-terminal canonical signal sequence, an internal passenger domain, and a C-terminal outer membrane domain. The signal sequence directs the protein to the Sec machinery and is cleaved after it facilitates transport of the polypeptide from the cytoplasm to the periplasm. The C-terminal domain inserts into the outer membrane and forms a β-barrel with a central hydrophilic channel. Ultimately, the passenger domain is presented on the surface of the organism and influences interaction with host molecules.[120] Recent studies have established that autotransporter proteins can be separated into two distinct groups, designated *conventional autotransporters* and *trimeric autotransporters* (Fig. 1.3).[52] In conventional autotransporters, the C-terminal outer membrane domain contains roughly 300 amino acids and is a monomeric β-barrel with a single N-terminal α-helix spanning the pore (Fig. 1.4A).[232,299] In trimeric autotransporters, the C-terminal outer membrane domain contains approximately 70 amino acids and forms heat- and detergent-resistant trimers in the outer membrane. Each trimer forms a β-barrel with four strands from each of the three subunits and with three N-terminal α-helices spanning the pore (Fig. 1.4B).[204]

One example of a conventional autotransporter adhesin is the *H. influenzae* Hap protein, which was discovered based on its ability to promote adherence and low-level invasion in assays with cultured human epithelial cells.[286] Hap also promotes bacterial binding to extracellular matrix proteins and bacterial microcolony formation.[83,121] Examination of chimeric proteins and studies with purified protein have demonstrated that the adhesive activity responsible for Hap-mediated adherence, invasion, binding to extracellular matrix proteins, and microcolony formation localizes to the passenger domain, referred to as Hap_S.[83,121] More detailed characterization of Hap_S has established that the region responsible for interaction with host epithelial cells and microcolony formation resides in the C-terminal 311 amino acids and may have utility as a vaccine antigen.[57,82,183] This region folds into a triangular prism-like structure that can mediate Hap-Hap dimerization and higher degrees of multimerization, thus facilitating interbacterial interaction and microcolony formation.[202] A prototype member of the trimeric autotransporter subfamily is the *H. influenzae* Hia adhesin. This protein is expressed in a subset of nontypable *H. influenzae* strains and contains two homologous high-affinity trimeric binding domains, creating the potential for stable multivalent interaction with respiratory epithelial cells.[175,203,343]

Another group of nonpilus adhesins is typified by intimin, a protein expressed by enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC), enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC), and the murine pathogen *Citrobacter rodentium*. Intimin contains a flexible N terminus, a central β-barrel domain that integrates into the outer membrane, and a C-terminal binding domain that interacts with the translocated intimin receptor (Tir).[311] Tir is an interesting example of a pathogen-derived receptor that is inserted into target host cells. After initial cell attachment mediated by type 4 pili, EPEC employs a type III secretion system (discussed in detail later in this chapter) to inject Tir into the host cell cytoplasm,[164,335] from where it is then inserted into the host cell membrane.[254] The subsequent interaction between

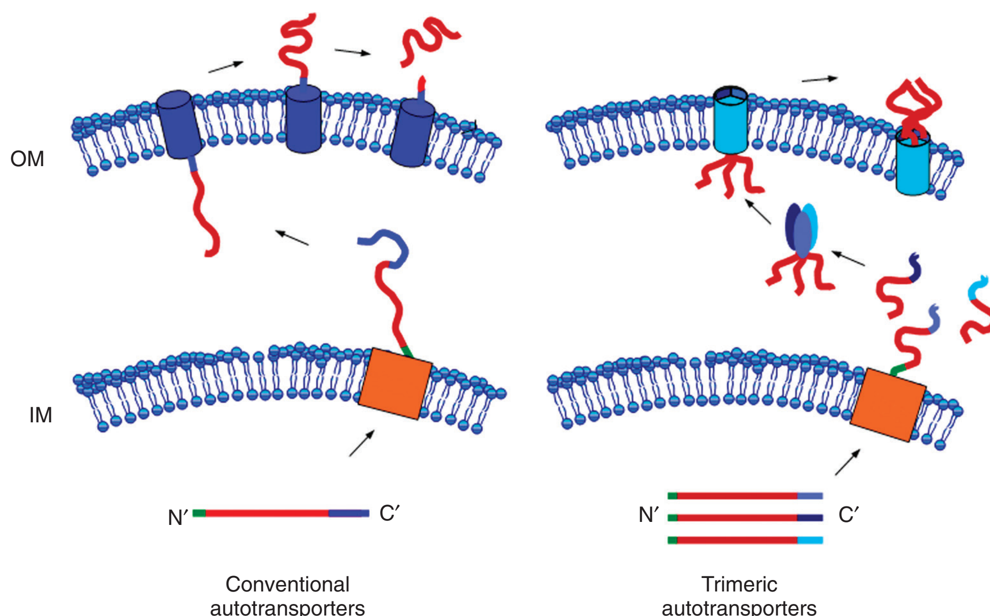


FIG. 1.3 Autotransporter protein secretion pathway. Conventional autotransporter secretion is shown on the left, and trimeric autotransporter secretion is shown on the right. Autotransporter proteins are synthesized as preproteins with three functional domains, including an N-terminal signal sequence (shown in green), an internal passenger domain (shown in red), and a C-terminal outer membrane β-barrel domain (shown in blue). IM indicates inner membrane, and OM indicates outer membrane. Protein secretion begins with export of the protein from the cytoplasm via the inner membrane Sec machinery (Sec). Most conventional autotransporters are cleaved on the bacterial surface. (From Cotter SE, Surana NK, St Geme JW III. Trimeric autotransporters: a distinct subfamily of autotransporter proteins. *Trends Microbiol.* 2005;13:199–205.)

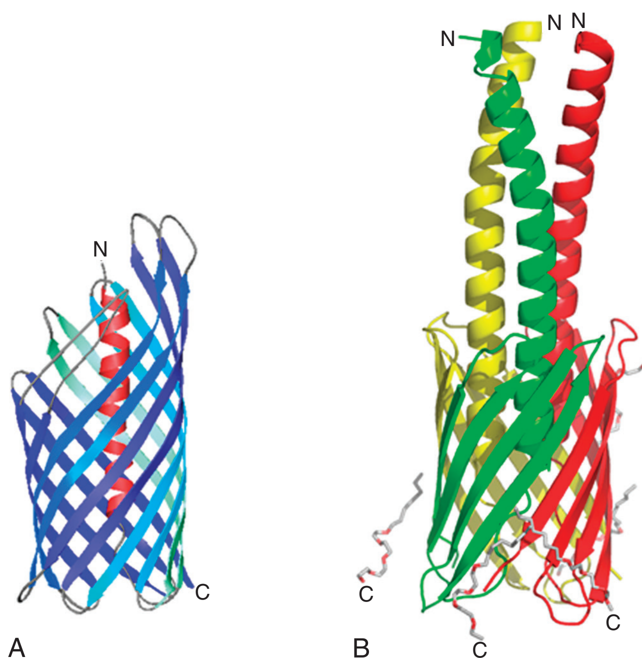


FIG. 1.4 Crystal structures of the C-terminal outer membrane β-barrel of autotransporter proteins. (A) Crystal structure of NalP, a conventional autotransporter; β strands are shown in shades of blue, and the α-helix that crosses the channel is shown in red. (B) Crystal structure of Hia, a trimeric autotransporter; individual subunits are shown in red, green, and yellow. (A, From Surana NK, Cotter SE, Yeo HJ, et al. Structural determinants of *Haemophilus influenzae* adherence to host epithelium: variations on type V secretion. In: Waksman G, Caparon MG, Hultgren SJ, editors. *Structural Basis of Bacterial Pathogenesis*. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 2005:129–148. B, From Meng G, Surana NK, St Geme JW III, et al. Structure of the outer membrane translocator domain of the *Haemophilus influenzae* Hia trimeric autotransporter. *EMBO J.* 2006;25:2297–304.)

intimin (on the bacterial surface) and Tir (now present on the host cell surface) triggers receptor clustering, dramatic rearrangement of the actin cytoskeleton, and formation of a distinctive pedestal referred to as an *attaching and effacing (A/E) lesion* (Fig. 1.5).[164,263] The bacterial genes essential for formation of A/E lesions reside within a 35-kb region of the EPEC chromosome called the locus of enterocyte effacement (LEE), an example of a pathogenicity island.[70,196] This locus is highly conserved in content and organization across all A/E pathogens and contains the genes encoding intimin, Tir, and the requisite type III secretion system. The interactions of Tir and other type III secreted effectors with host proteins influencing actin polymerization are beginning to be understood.[265,344] Tir contains domains analogous to host immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motifs (ITIM) important for regulation of eukaryotic signaling. On this basis, Tir recruits certain host proteins to regulate actin dynamics and inhibit proinflammatory signaling pathways.[61,266,280,328] Given its central role in EHEC/EPEC pathogenesis and its immunogenicity, intimin is also being examined as a target for the development of antivirulence therapeutics or vaccines in A/E diseases.

In recent years, investigators have identified a large family of nonpilus adhesins involved in adherence to host extracellular matrix proteins including fibronectin, laminin, vitronectin, collagen, fibrinogen, and a variety of proteoglycans. These adhesins have been classified as microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules (MSCRAMMs) and are especially prevalent among gram-positive bacteria.[238] In gram-positive organisms these proteins are covalently anchored to the cell wall peptidoglycan and have a characteristic primary amino acid sequence. In particular, the C terminus contains a segment rich in proline and glycine residues, an LPXTG motif (involved in sorting and covalently anchoring the protein to the cell wall), a hydrophobic membrane-spanning domain, and a short positively charged segment that resides in the cytoplasm and serves as a cell wall retention signal. Adhesive functions are typically located near the N terminus.[85]

Staphylococcus aureus is a common gram-positive pathogen in children and is capable of producing a variety of MSCRAMMs, including collagen-binding protein (CNA), fibronectin-binding proteins A and B, and clumping factors A and B. Recent work indicates that although

FIG. 1.5 Enteropathogenic *E. coli* are perched on pedestals in the attaching and effacing lesion. (Courtesy B.B. Finlay; from Rosenshine I, Ruschkowski S, Stein M, et al. A pathogenic bacterium triggers epithelial signals to form a functional bacterial receptor that mediates actin pseudopod formation. *EMBO J.* 1996;15:2613–24.)

these proteins mediate typical binding interactions with host proteins, they are not monospecific, and a given MSCRAMM may bind multiple host connective tissue components or multiple motifs within a single host fiber type.[284] In addition, many are capable of provoking platelet activation. *S. aureus* strains recovered from patients with septic arthritis commonly express CNA, which mediates binding to cartilage in vitro and appears to play a key role in the pathogenesis of septic arthritis in experimental mice.[237,239,300] Fibronectin-binding protein A (FnBPA) shares homology with *S. pyogenes* protein F and mediates binding to fibronectin and the γ chain of fibrinogen, as well as to elastin and tropoelastin.[162,262,322] Accordingly, this protein is important in *S. aureus* endocarditis[247] and in infections of implanted biomaterials, which become coated with fibrinogen and fibrin soon after implantation. Clumping factor (ClfA) was named based on the observation that it mediates bacterial clumping in the presence of soluble fibrinogen.[197] Similar to FnBPA, ClfA mediates binding to fibrinogen-coated surfaces in vitro and probably contributes to infections of artificial surfaces.

Other Mechanisms of Adherence

Candida albicans is a common inhabitant of mucosal surfaces and an important cause of systemic disease, especially in patients with compromised immunity. *Candida* blastospores are capable of efficient adhesion to epithelial cells, leading to budding and division. In addition, germ tube formation occurs, facilitating penetration through the epithelial barrier and then dissemination to distant sites.[135] In recent years, several candidate *C. albicans* adhesins have been identified.[10,134,180,346] Of particular interest is a protein called INT1, which shares functional homology with the vertebrate integrin family. Integrins are normally expressed by cells of the human immune system (neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages) and mediate cellular binding and shape-changing functions. Each integrin is a heterodimer of an α chain and a β chain. There are a number of distinct α and β chains, and each combination displays a unique binding specificity. INT1 is an α integrin–like protein that recognizes the RGD sequence of the C3 fragment iC3b on epithelial cells. In in vitro assays, short peptides encompassing the RGD sequence are capable of inhibiting *C. albicans* adherence by 50%, confirming that INT1 plays a significant role as an adhesin and suggesting that other adhesins also exist.[135] Beyond promoting adherence to epithelium, INT1 disguises organisms as leukocytes, allowing evasion of phagocytosis. Of note, introduction of INT1 into *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* confers a capacity for adherence and also results in germ tube formation, indicating a role for this protein in morphogenesis.[95,94]

The adhesive properties of *C. albicans* are closely tied to its morphologic state. For example, adherence to buccal epithelial cells is greater by organisms bearing germ tubes than by yeast forms.[169] With this information in mind, Staab and coworkers searched a germ tube cDNA library and identified a putative adhesin called hyphal wall protein 1 (Hwp1) encoded by the *hwp1* gene. Examination of the predicted amino acid sequence of Hwp1 revealed similarity to proteins that are substrates for mammalian transglutaminase enzymes.[290] These enzymes form a cornified envelope on squamous epithelial cells (including buccal epithelial cells) by cross-linking relevant substrates.[302] Interestingly, the interactions of germ tubes with buccal epithelial cells resist stresses (e.g., heating or treatment with sodium dodecylsulfate) capable of dissociating most typical microbe-host adhesive pairs, and elimination of expression of Hwp1 results in a marked reduction in adhesion to buccal epithelial cells.[23,289] Thus Hwp1 represents a unique adhesive strategy, employing host transglutaminase enzymes to cross-link Hwp1 (via a glycosylphosphatidylinositol remnant anchor) directly to surface proteins on buccal epithelial cells.[288] More recently, Hwp1 has been shown to be important for *Candida* biofilm formation,[77,220] indicating that a similar mechanism may also support interactions between candidal cells.

TISSUE TROPISM

Most microorganisms demonstrate restriction in the range of hosts, tissues, and cell types that they colonize. This restriction is referred to as *tropism* and generally reflects the specificity of the interaction between a given microbial adhesin and its cognate receptor. Accordingly, tropism is determined by the distribution of the relevant host receptor.

P pili of uropathogenic *E. coli* serve as the platform for presentation of one of three different PapG variants, referred to as class I, class II, and class III PapG. All three variants recognize globoseries glycolipids, but each binds with a distinct specificity to the globoseries glycolipid isotypes. For example, class I PapG preferentially recognizes globotriosylceramide (GbO3, Gal-α1,4-Gal-β1,3-Glc-ceramide), class II PapG preferentially recognizes globoside (GbO4, GalNAc-β1,3-Gal-α1,4-Gal-β1,3-Glc-ceramide), and class III PapG preferentially interacts with Forssman antigen (GbO5, GalNAc-α1,3-GalNAc-β1,3-Gal-α1,4-Gal-β1,3-Glc-ceramide).[297] Globoside is the dominant globoseries glycolipid expressed in human kidney, and most human isolates of *E. coli* associated with pyelonephritis express class II PapG. In contrast, Forssman antigen is the most abundant globoseries glycolipid in dog kidney, and more than 50% of canine urinary isolates of *E. coli* express class III PapG.[341] *E. coli*–expressing P pili with class II PapG are not found as a cause of urinary tract infection in dogs. Thus the specificity of the PapG variant at the tip of the P pilus influences host range, favoring infection of either human or dog.

The crystal structure of class II PapG bound to Gal-α1,4-Gal was solved by Dodson and coworkers, uncovering the structural basis of PapG binding specificity.[66] Of particular interest, the PapG receptor binding site is located on the side of the molecule and must be oriented with its N- to C-terminal axis parallel to the host cell membrane to allow docking to the receptor. This orientation may be facilitated by the flexibility inherent in the tip fibrillum. The PapG binding site consists of two regions. The first forms a β-barrel, and the second is composed of a central antiparallel β-sheet that is flanked on one side by two 2-stranded β-sheets and on the other side by an α-helix. When class II PapG interacts with GbO4, the arginine residue at position 170 in PapG makes contact with the GbO4 side chain. Interestingly, in class I PapG, a histidine residue occupies position 170, interfering with potential contact with the GbO4 side chain. Similarly, class II PapG and class III PapG differ in amino acids required for interaction with the GbO5 side chain.[66]

Group A streptococcus *(S. pyogenes)* is a common cause of infections of skin and soft tissue, including impetigo, cellulitis, and necrotizing fasciitis. Adherence to host cells by *S. pyogenes* is influenced by nonpilus adhesins called M protein and protein F. M protein forms a fiber and consists of a C-terminal region that anchors the protein in the cell wall,

a coiled-coil rod region extending approximately 50 nm from the cell wall, and a short nonhelical domain extending more distally.[84] Protein F is a 120-kDa protein that is notable for a tandem repeat element consisting of up to six repeats of 32 to 44 amino acids adjacent to the C terminus.[112,233] M protein promotes adherence to human keratinocytes via interaction with the CD46 molecule (also called membrane cofactor protein, or MCP), whereas protein F mediates adherence to epidermal Langerhans cells, which are located in the basal layer of the epidermis.[229,230] Thus both M protein and protein F contribute to group A streptococcal adherence to the skin, but each protein directs interaction with a different population of epidermal cells.

Early studies demonstrated that human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) infects $CD4^+$ cells and interacts with the CD4 molecule but that CD4 alone is not sufficient to permit infection. More recent observations have established that a number of host cell chemokine receptors, especially CCR5 and CXCR4, serve as coreceptors for HIV-1 and are required for viral entry into $CD4^+$ target cells. These coreceptors appear to influence the cellular tropism displayed by different HIV-1 variants.[62] All HIV variants are able to replicate in primary T cells, but only some can also replicate in primary macrophages or in immortalized T-cell lines. Asymptomatic HIV-infected individuals carry strains that generally use CCR5 as a coreceptor (termed *M5 strains*) and are non–syncytium-inducing in vitro. Such strains have classically been described as macrophage tropic (M-tropic), but recent experiments have demonstrated that these M5 strains can also infect $CD4^+$ T cells and peripheral blood mononuclear cells.[245] Rapid viral mutation due to the error-prone HIV polymerase and HIV reverse transcriptase leads to the production within the host of syncytium-inducing, T-cell–tropic (T-tropic) HIV-1 strains, which predominate in the circulation of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.[62] These variants are generally restricted to CXCR4 (expressed on T cells) as a coreceptor, although some primary syncytium-inducing variants can use both CCR5 and CXCR4.[71,79,276] T-tropic, syncytium-inducing strains are characterized by positively charged residues at fixed positions of the V3 loop and changes in charge and length of the V2 region of the viral envelope glycoprotein gp120, which binds to CD4 and coreceptors before viral entry into host cells.[86,87,106] Thus cellular tropism is closely aligned, but not synonymous, with HIV coreceptor usage.

New HIV-1 infection is selectively established by M-tropic HIV-1 strains, even if the transmitting host harbors more pathogenic non–M-tropic strains as well.[317,352] CCR5 is also expressed on the surface of rectal and vaginal epithelial cells, which may be sites of initial encounter between HIV-1 and the human host.[349] The importance of CCR5 in HIV-1 binding to $CD4^+$ cells is underscored by the observation that individuals homozygous for a 32-bp deletion in CCR5 (the Δ32 allele) are resistant to infection with HIV-1.[137,184] The Δ32 heterozygous state does not necessarily protect against HIV-1 acquisition, although HIV disease in heterozygous patients may follow an attenuated course. This allele is surprisingly frequent (10%–14%) in white populations, leading to speculation that it provided a survival advantage during one or more historical epidemics of infectious diseases.[225] However, more recent data suggest that the Δ32 allele may actually confer immune deficiency in the presence of challenge with certain viral pathogens, such as West Nile virus.[100,101] Of note, CCR5 may have a role in controlling the development of malignancy, including lymphoma, raising some concern about developing anti-HIV pharmacologic agents that target CCR5 function.[178] Finally, co-evolution of viral determinants and host cell receptors may determine the spectrum of tissue and organ involvement within the host. For example, the chemokine receptor CCR8 may facilitate the entry of neurotropic HIV-1 strains into brain cells,[152] and envelopes derived from brain isolates of HIV are adapted to infect cells with low-level CD4/CCR5 expression, such as neuroglia and brain macrophages.[244]

Other viruses also demonstrate tropism for specific cells or tissues within the host. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) has been demonstrated to use multiple cell surface molecules in sequence to locate and gain entry into target cells. HCV is bound to low-density lipoprotein (LDL) in serum and first binds to scavenger-receptor B1 (SR-B1), which is enriched on liver cells and serves to bind lipoprotein molecules.[34] After this initial binding event, HCV E2 protein interacts with the CD81 molecule, the critical receptor for free virus.[159,321,351] Once virus has bound to CD81, this virus-receptor complex traffics to the gap junction, where the virus interacts with two key gap junction proteins, claudin-1 and occludin-1, to enter cells.[78,114,172] Human occludin-1 recently has been shown to be necessary for HCV entry into mouse cells, an advance that will facilitate disease modeling in the laboratory.[248] Although the liver does not exclusively express any of these four molecules, the combination of these four, the structural organization of liver cells, and other yet-undetermined intracellular factors account for the tropism of HCV for the liver.[246]

Similar observations have been made for coxsackievirus isolates, which bind to the coxsackie-adenovirus receptor (CAR) molecule located in the tight junction for entry into cells.[12,42,53,158] Brain, heart, and muscle cells are enriched for CAR in the fetal and neonatal period, whereas adult cells from these tissues express significantly lower levels of the receptor.[131,147] This developmental difference in CAR density is the likely explanation for severe coxsackievirus infections that are disproportionately seen in infants and young children compared with adults. CAR then allows for an interaction with the tight junction that is mediated by occludin-1, which allows for viral co-opting of host trafficking pathways.[53]

Among eukaryotic pathogens, tissue tropism can also be a major determinant of virulence. Cerebral malaria is a life-threatening consequence of infection with the protozoan parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* and results from adherence of parasite-infected erythrocytes to cerebral vascular endothelium.[209] During erythrocyte infection, the malaria parasite exports a variety of surface receptors to the host plasma membrane. The *P. falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein 1 (PfEMP1) multigene family represents a highly variable set of such receptors, only one variant of which is expressed at any given time. A substantial body of work has established that different forms of PfEMP1 possess distinct tissue adherence patterns.[171] Specific classes of PfEMP1 types (Group A DC8 and DC13) are associated with cerebral vascular adherence in vitro and are correlated with severe malaria in clinical populations.[7,38,177] More recent studies suggest that these PfEMP1 forms mediate adherence through interaction with the endothelial protein C receptor.[314]

BIOFILMS

After attachment to a particular surface, a number of pathogens are capable of forming *biofilms*, which can be defined as structured communities of microbial cells enclosed in a self-produced exopolysaccharide matrix. Although most studies of biofilms have involved a single species, it is likely that biofilms relevant to human infection often involve multiple species sharing the advantages of biofilm existence. Human infections associated with biofilms include dental caries, lower airway infection with *P. aeruginosa* and other organisms in patients with cystic fibrosis, and foreign body infections in patients with prostheses and implanted devices. In addition, biofilm formation likely occurs during osteomyelitis and endocarditis.[49]

P. aeruginosa is a model organism for the study of biofilms and forms pillars of stationary (sessile) bacteria held together by an extracellular polysaccharide called alginate. Interposed among these pillars are channels that facilitate the flow of nutrients and provide pathways for motile (planktonic) organisms to move about (Fig. 1.6A). In experiments directed at defining the early steps of *P. aeruginosa* biofilm formation, O'Toole and Kolter established that flagella are required for initial bacterial attachment, presumably because these appendages promote movement toward the relevant surface. After attachment, type 4 pili and pilus-mediated twitching motility promote formation of microcolonies[227] in which transcription of *algC, algD,* and *algU* is activated, resulting in synthesis of alginate.[59] Pulmonary isolates from patients with cystic fibrosis often form highly mucoid colonies (reflecting expression of alginate) or can form tiny colonies on agar plates, the so-called small-colony variant (SCV) phenotype associated with biofilm formation and increased antibiotic resistance.[115,116,291]

Development of the complex community present within a biofilm requires intercellular communication to coordinate the metabolic and other activities of members of the community. *P. aeruginosa* employs several identified *quorum-sensing* systems, which involve the production

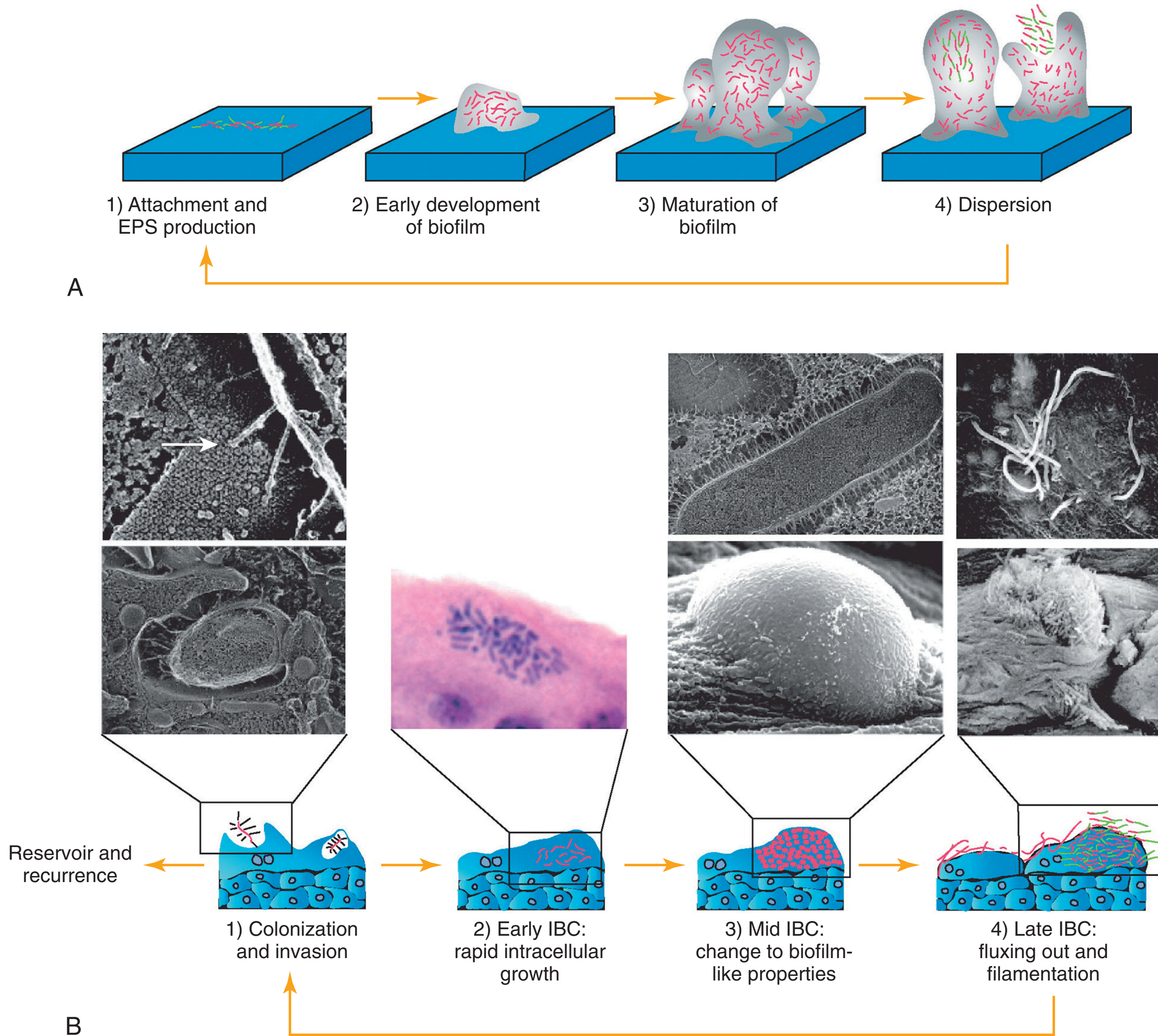


FIG. 1.6 In vitro *Pseudomonas* biofilm formation and parallel stages of formation of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* intracellular bacterial communities (IBCs). (A) Dynamics of *P. aeruginosa* biofilm formation on an inert surface. Keys to the formation of the biofilm include flagella-mediated attachment, production of exopolysaccharide (EPS), type 4 pilus–based twitching motility, and a quorum sensing system. (B) Composite representation of the stages of IBC formation and maturation. (A, From Costerton JW, Stewart PS, Greenberg EP. Bacterial biofilms: a common cause of persistent infections. *Science.* 1999;284:1318–22, copyright 1999 American Association for the Advancement of Science. B, From Kau AL, Hunstad DA, Hultgren SJ. Interaction of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* with host uroepithelium. *Curr Opin Microbiol.* 2005;8:54–9.)

of small molecules that are sensed by neighboring organisms and regulate gene expression in these neighbors. One well-studied system is based on the acyl-homoserine lactone called *N*-(3-oxododecanoyl)-L-homoserine lactone (3OC12-HSL).[60,236] 3OC12-HSL is synthesized in a reaction catalyzed by LasI and accumulates with increases in population density. Ultimately, 3OC12-HSL reaches a critical concentration and then interacts with LasR, serving to activate transcription of a number of genes. Host inflammatory pathways are also induced directly by accumulated 3OC12-HSL.[279] Organisms with a mutation in *lasI* are capable of attachment and microcolony formation, but the resulting microcolonies remain thin, undifferentiated, and sensitive to dispersion by detergents. Addition of the missing lactone signal to the *lasI* mutant restores development into structured, thick, biocide-resistant biofilms, as are observed with wild-type organisms.[60] In vivo, mutation in *lasI* impedes establishment of pulmonary infection in mice.[242,340]

Biofilms also play a prominent role in human infections with *Candida* species, with examples including oral thrush and catheter-associated infections. Although several pathogenic *Candida* species can form biofilms in the host, the ultrastructure and the molecular strategies underlying biofilm formation vary from one species to another. *C. albicans* is the best studied *Candida* species and relies on the expression of certain cell wall proteins (including Hwp1),[219] a regulated yeast-to-hyphal switch described earlier, and quorum-sensing molecules such as *E,E*-farnesol, which represses filamentation and can suppress the growth of other nearby bacterial and fungal species.[63,133,275]

Biofilms constitute a protected mode of growth that allows survival in a hostile environment—for example, in the presence of host immune mechanisms or antimicrobial agents.[49] Based on studies of *P. aeruginosa*, sessile bacteria release antigens and stimulate production of antibodies, but these antibodies are ineffective in killing organisms within biofilms.[41] Similarly, sessile *P. aeruginosa* stimulate a diminished oxidative burst and are relatively refractory to phagocytic uptake. In addition, fungi and bacteria within biofilms are resistant to the effects of a number of antimicrobial agents, in part because these agents are unable to diffuse into the biofilm and in part because these organisms may exist in a slow-growing or otherwise protected phenotypic state.[49] Biofilm-like

microbial communities have also been described within host epithelial cells, as with uropathogenic *E. coli* in the mammalian bladder.[6] Recently, new approaches to antimicrobial therapy include novel natural products and other small molecules that inhibit quorum-sensing and biofilm formation.[36,96]

CELL ENTRY AND INTRACELLULAR LIFE

After adherence to a host surface, many pathogenic bacteria are able to invade and survive inside epithelial cells and other nonprofessional phagocytes (i.e., M cells in intestinal Peyer's patches). In addition, some pathogens are able to survive inside professional phagocytes (macrophages and neutrophils). Invasion may represent a mechanism to breach host mucosal barriers and gain access to deeper or more distant tissues. Alternatively, invasion may provide the organism with a special niche (e.g., protecting it from host immune mechanisms). In the case of viruses, cell entry ensures access to the cell machinery required for viral replication.

Generally the process of bacterial invasion involves a class of molecules called invasins that mediate adherence and entry. For many bacteria, invasion is an active event that relies on underlying host cell functions and is associated with rearrangement of the host cell cytoskeleton. Once inside the host cell, the invading or internalized organism usually is localized within a membrane-bound vacuole that contains lysosomal enzymes. In some cases the pathogen escapes from this vacuole and enters the cytoplasm, a more permissive environment. In other cases, the pathogen remains in the vacuole and neutralizes lysosomal enzymatic activity. The processes of invasion into cells, survival within cells, cell-to-cell spread, and entry into the circulation define the extent of infection and dissemination.

Invasion

In considering the molecular mechanism of bacterial invasion, perhaps best characterized are the enteropathogenic *Yersinia* species—namely, *Y. pseudotuberculosis* and *Y. enterocolitica*. These organisms are usually acquired by ingestion of contaminated food or water and typically cause self-limited enteritis or mesenteric adenitis. In infants and other individuals with compromised immunity, they sometimes produce systemic disease. The primary determinant of *Y. pseudotuberculosis* and *Y. enterocolitica* invasion is an adhesive outer membrane protein called invasin, which is encoded by a chromosomal locus called inv and binds tightly to a family of β1 integrins expressed on host cells, including α3β1 integrin on the surface of intestinal M cells.[145] The interaction between invasin and β1 integrins initiates a cascade of signaling steps in the host cell, resulting in actin rearrangement and formation of large complexes of cytoskeletal elements (talin, vinculin, α-actinin, and others) termed *focal adhesions.*[144] Bacterial entry into the host cell occurs via a "zipper-like" mechanism, with the plasma membrane zippering around the invading organism.

Beyond invasin, two additional proteins called YadA and Ail also influence invasion by enteropathogenic *Yersinia* species. YadA is a 45-kDa surface protein that is encoded by the 70-kb *Yersinia* virulence plasmid. It is highly expressed under environmental conditions (e.g., temperature of 37°C) in which invasin is repressed.[75] YadA reaches the bacterial surface via the autotransporter pathway and exists in a trimeric form that is essential for its adhesive activity.[51] Like invasin, YadA promotes invasion through binding to β1 integrins on the host cell surface, but its binding occurs indirectly via extracellular matrix molecules, including collagens, laminin, and fibronectin.[76] Based on studies using a mouse oral infection model, in *Y. enterocolitica* YadA is essential for survival and multiplication in Peyer's patches, whereas in *Y. pseudotuberculosis* YadA is dispensable for full virulence.[22] Ail is a 17-kDa outer membrane protein that also is encoded by a chromosomal locus *(ail)* and mediates high levels of adherence and low levels of invasion in assays with cultured epithelial cells. In addition, Ail mediates resistance to complement-mediated serum killing, independent of an effect on invasion.[19]

Similar to these pathogenic *Yersinia* species, *Listeria monocytogenes* invades epithelial cells via a zipper-like mechanism. Invasion is mediated by proteins called internalin A (InlA) and internalin B (InlB), which are required for virulence in animal models. InlA interacts with E-cadherin, a host cell transmembrane protein with an intracellular domain that interacts with the cytoskeleton.[205] InlB interacts with C1q on host cells and promotes invasion by activating the PI-3 kinase pathway.[24] Uropathogenic strains of *E. coli* also invade epithelial cells via a zipper-like mechanism mediated by the FimH adhesin expressed on the tip of type 1 pili. In experiments with cultured bladder epithelial cells, FimH is both necessary and sufficient for entry, as demonstrated by examination of a *fimH*⁻ mutant and of latex beads coated with purified FimH.[194] In vitro experiments further suggest that FimH-mediated bacterial binding to a mannose-coated surface may be strengthened by shear forces, such as fluid flow over the surface.[307,308] After FimH-dependent invasion into superficial epithelial cells of the murine bladder, UPEC multiply rapidly to form intracellular bacterial communities, which display some features of biofilms, including community behavior, differential gene expression, and protection from antimicrobial agents (see Fig. 1.6B).[6,156,160] A subset of internalized bacteria ultimately form a quiescent bacterial reservoir within the uroepithelium that resists immune clearance and antibiotic therapy and may serve as a seed for recurrent infections.[139,213,214]

Salmonella enterica serovar *typhimurium (S. typhimurium)* is an example of a pathogen that invades cells by a mechanism distinct from zippering. On contact with the epithelial cell surface, *S. typhimurium* triggers a dramatic host cell response characterized by actin rearrangement, calcium and inositol phosphate fluxes, and a "splash" of membrane ruffling surrounding the point of entry. Bacterial internalization into the cell occurs rapidly, with organisms appearing in membrane-bound vacuoles within a few minutes of initial contact with the host cell. The determinants of *S. typhimurium* invasion are encoded by a pathogenicity island called SPI-1, located at centisome 63 on the bacterial chromosome.[92] Especially important in this region is a prototypical *type III secretion system,* which forms a needle-like complex on the bacterial surface that breaches the host cell membrane and serves to translocate bacterial proteins directly into the host cell, altering the host cell cytoskeleton[43,186] and influencing immune responses. The base of the needle complex spans both the inner and outer membranes and is about 40 nm in diameter, whereas the needle itself is 8 nm in width and approximately 80 nm in length (Fig. 1.7).[45,93]

The proteins secreted through the *S. typhimurium* needle complex (and other type III secretion systems) and into the host cell are referred to as *effector proteins.* SopE is an effector protein that mediates the initial rearrangement of actin and ruffling of the host cell membrane. It functions as a guanyl-nucleotide exchange factor (GEF) and activates two host cell Rho GTPase proteins called Rac and Cdc42.[35,111,113] SptP is an effector protein that functions as an antagonist of SopE, mediating reversal of actin rearrangement by converting Rac and Cdc42 to the inactive forms (GDP forms). Consistent with these functions, SopE and SptP directly antagonize each other when coinjected into cells.[91] Other effector proteins secreted by the *S. typhimurium* SPI-1 type III secretion system include the inositol phosphate phosphorylase SopB, which disrupts normal host cell signaling mechanisms,[224] and AvrA, which interferes with the nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) signaling pathway in host cells, thereby downregulating host inflammatory responses.[44]

Important accessory and regulatory genes are also present within SPI-1. As an example, the *sicA* gene is just upstream of the *sipB* and *sipC* genes and encodes an accessory protein with chaperone activity essential for stabilization and translocation of SipB, SipC, and SopE.[313] Other chaperones encoded by SPI-1 are involved in the stabilization and translocation of other effector proteins. The genetic and environmental factors that regulate the expression of type III secretion machinery and secreted proteins represent an area of ongoing study.[5]

In *Plasmodium falciparum*, the mechanisms of both host erythrocyte invasion and immune evasion are tightly linked. A mature parasite may release as many as 32 daughter parasites, called merozoites, into the bloodstream. In less than 30 seconds, merozoites attach to and invade new erythrocytes. High-titer antibodies to invasion proteins, as are present in the serum of semi-immune individuals living in endemic areas, can block these processes. For this reason, the molecular invasion machinery of *P. falciparum* is of considerable interest for vaccine development.[240,303] The initial contact between *Plasmodium* merozoites and host erythrocytes is weak and is thought to be mediated through

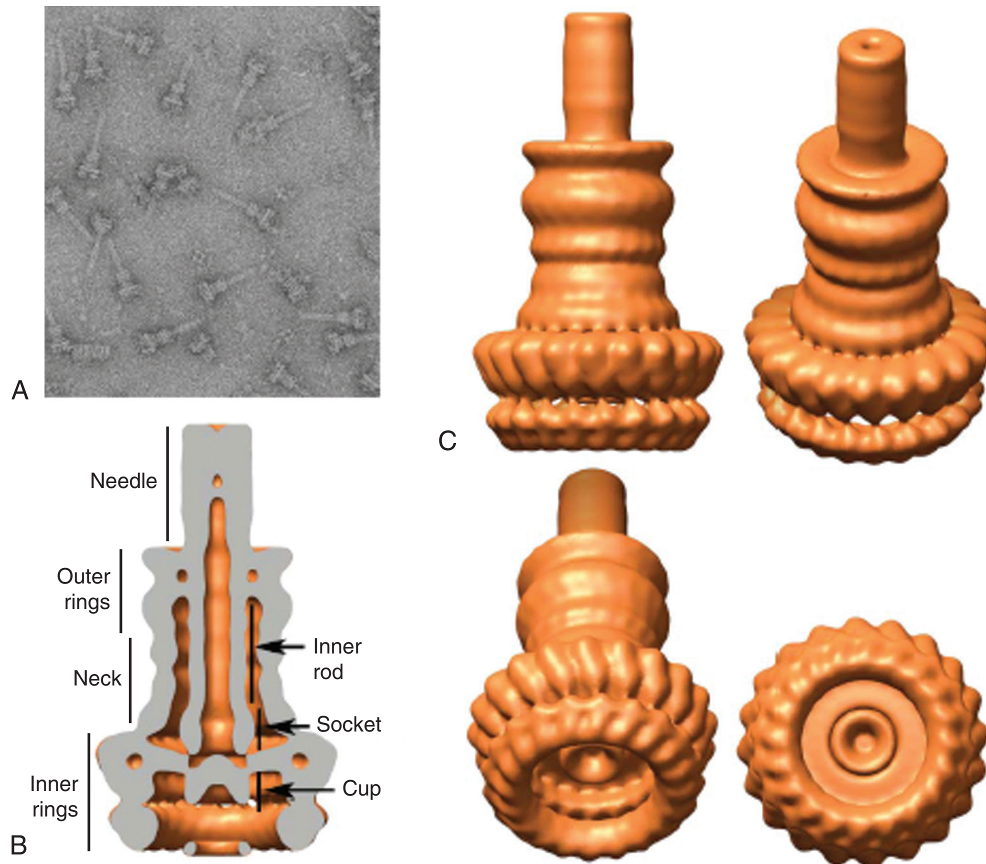


FIG. 1.7 General structure of the gram-negative type III secretion system, according to electron micrographic and other data. Represented are (A) electron micrographs of isolated needle complexes, (B) cross-sectional schematic of the components of the needle complex, and (C) surface views of the assembly. (From Galan JE, Wolf-Watz H. Protein delivery into eukaryotic cells by type III secretion machines. *Nature.* 2006;444:567–73.)

merozoite surface proteins (MSPs) present along the entire merozoite surface. Stronger interactions are mediated by several additional receptors, notably the erythrocyte binding antigens EBA-175 and EBA-140, which engage the erythrocyte-specific receptors glycophorin A and glycophorin B, respectively. Recently, an additional parasite protein called PfRH5 was recognized as an indispensible mediator of parasite invasion via interaction with the human receptor basigin.[54] Anti-RH5 antisera have potent invasion-inhibiting activities,[312] and an RH5-based vaccine showed efficacy in an *Aotus* monkey infection model.[72] On the basis of these data, PfRH5 has emerged as a strong candidate vaccine antigen to prevent severe malaria.

Intracellular Survival

Once an organism invades a nonprofessional phagocyte or is ingested by a professional phagocyte, several potential outcomes exist. Often, the organism is killed. However, some pathogens have developed strategies to survive and replicate inside host cells, in some cases within a vacuole and in others by escaping from the vacuole.

There is general agreement that *S. typhimurium* resides within a membrane-bound vacuole in both professional and nonprofessional phagocytes. However, the vacuole lacks several lysosomal markers typical of the main endocytic pathway (the mannose-6-phosphate receptor pathway) and appears to be distinct from this pathway. Insight into the molecular determinants of intravacuolar survival came when two independent groups reported the discovery of a second *Salmonella* pathogenicity island, now called SPI-2.[122,228] This island maps to centisome 31 and encodes another type III secretion system, including structural proteins (*ssa* locus),[122] effector proteins (*sse* locus), and accessory proteins (*ssc* locus). In addition, this region encodes a *two-component regulatory system* consisting of a membrane-located sensor kinase (SsrA) and a transcriptional regulator (SsrB).[228] Mutations in SPI-2 result in reduced survival inside macrophages, with no effect on adherence and invasion in assays with intestinal epithelial cells.[228] *Salmonella* SPI-2 mutants demonstrate reduced virulence in experimental mice (up to a 104-fold reduction in 50% lethal dose), suggesting that survival inside macrophages is a key factor in the pathogenesis of disease.[273] Expression of SPI-2 genes within the macrophage vacuole depends at least in part on the acidic intravacuolar environment. Inhibition of macrophage vacuolar acidification using bafilomycin A1 (an inhibitor of the vacuolar proton ATPase) results in a sharp attenuation in transcription of SPI-2 genes. This effect is not reproduced by low pH alone outside the vacuole, suggesting that other environmental effects within the vacuole influence SPI-2 expression.[37] Recent work indicates that *Salmonella* SPI-2 transcription is activated before invasion, apparently preparing the pathogen for the hostile intracellular environment.[26] As a group, the SPI-2 genes appear to modulate host endocytic and exocytic transport mechanisms and inflammatory signaling.[1,142]

A third *Salmonella* pathogenicity island called SPI-3 also promotes survival inside macrophages. This island is located at centisome 82 and was discovered by examining the *Salmonella selC* locus, a tRNA gene where pathogenicity islands reside in some strains of *E. coli.*[15,17] SPI-3 contains the *mgtBC* operon, which permits *S. typhimurium* growth in environments with low concentrations of Mg^{2+}, including macrophages. In particular, mutation of the *mgtBC* operon abolishes the ability of *S. typhimurium* to replicate in low-Mg^{2+} liquid media and in macrophages, and addition of Mg^{2+} to the medium after phagocytosis restores the ability to survive intracellularly. Homologous *mgtBC* genes have been found in other organisms with intracellular lifestyles, such as *Brucella melitensis* and *Yersinia pestis.*[16] In *Salmonella,* the *mgtBC* genes are expressed after internalization into host cells under control of the

PhoP-PhoQ two-component regulatory system, a complex that directs expression of a number of virulence determinants.[191]

The ability to survive within phagocytic cells may provide *Salmonella* with a means to exploit an intrinsic host pathway and disseminate to distant sites. In particular, certain phagocytes express the β2 integrin CD18, which mediates leukocyte migration in response to various stimuli. During *S. typhimurium* infection, CD18-expressing phagocytes carry organisms from the intestine to the spleen. Indeed, bacterial loads in the liver and spleen are reduced after oral inoculation in CD18-deficient mice when compared with infection in wild-type mice.[318] On the one hand, this function of CD18 facilitates initiation of a systemic immune response and benefits the host. However, at the same time, it provides bacteria with a mechanism of transit from the gut to organs of the reticuloendothelial system and elsewhere.

Mycobacterium tuberculosis is another intracellular pathogen, and it uses an array of mechanisms to ensure intracellular survival. The *M. tuberculosis* vacuole lacks the usual amounts of the vesicular proton ATPase responsible for mediating acidification and fails to acidify to normal levels.[298] In addition, *M. tuberculosis* blocks fusion of the vacuole with acidic lysosomes, further preventing acidification.[268] Similar to intracellular gram-negative bacterial pathogens, *M. tuberculosis* contains an *mgtC* gene, and mutation of this gene results in impaired virulence in cultured human macrophages and in mouse spleen and lung. Low Mg^{2+} concentration and mildly acidic pH inhibit the growth of the *mgtC* mutant, suggesting that the gene is important for survival in the phagosome, where such conditions may exist.[28] Another factor that influences *M. tuberculosis* survival within macrophages is isocitrate lyase, an enzyme of the glycolytic shunt that is essential for metabolism of fatty acids. Expression of isocitrate lyase is upregulated during infection of activated macrophages and is required for full virulence in a murine model of infection, independent of an effect on bacterial growth.[198] The crystal structure of *M. tuberculosis* isocitrate lyase has been solved and may provide a target for new drug therapies against persistent infection because this enzyme is absent from vertebrates.[271,282]

During the course of interaction with macrophages, *M. tuberculosis* (at a low to moderate multiplicity of infection) is capable of stimulating caspase-1 and inducing macrophage apoptosis. Interestingly, less virulent strains of *M. tuberculosis* are more potent inducers of apoptosis, perhaps resulting in benefit to the host by preventing systemic spread of infection.[163] At the same time *M. tuberculosis* possesses at least two anti-apoptotic mechanisms that further influence the outcome of macrophage encounters. First, *M. tuberculosis* infection enhances host macrophage production of soluble TNFR2, a protein that binds to tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNFα) and interferes with apoptosis.[8] Second, *M. tuberculosis* infection activates production of NF-κB, a transcriptional regulator that activates anti-apoptotic pathways within the host cell.[97] Of note, higher multiplicities of infection with virulent strains of *M. tuberculosis* can induce caspase-independent cell death in macrophages, a mechanism proposed to contribute to the formation of necrotic lesions during tuberculous disease.[179]

L. monocytogenes is an example of an organism that escapes from the phagocytic vacuole in macrophages and epithelial cells and moves into the cytoplasm. This organism causes meningitis and focal brain abscesses in humans and exhibits tropism for the fetoplacental unit. In pregnant women, listeriosis results in fetal loss in 30% of cases. Intravacuolar replication and escape from the vacuole are dependent on listeriolysin O, a hemolysin encoded by the *hly* gene.[13] Listeriolysin O interacts with cholesterol in host cell membranes and forms pores, leading to lysis of the phagosome.[90] Host enzymatic activities may also contribute to *Listeria* escape from the phagosome. In human epithelial cells the contributions of a broad-range phospholipase C (called PC-PLC) and a metalloproteinase called Mpl are most important for vacuolar escape in the absence of listeriolysin O.[107,192,281]

Intracellular survival of the protozoan parasite *Toxoplasma gondii* is thought to rely on parasite virulence factors that directly counter innate host defenses. In mice, interferon gamma (IFNγ) production is required to limit replication of *T. gondii*, in part through induction of immunity-related GTPases (IRGs). In mammalian cells, successful *T. gondii* strains replicate within a protected parasitophorous vacuole (PV) that does not fuse to the host lysosome. During infection with relatively nonpathogenic parasites, recruitment of IRGs to the PV results in disruption of the PV and parasite death. In contrast, highly pathogenic *T. gondii* express an active serine-threonine kinase called ROP18, which is exported into the host cytoplasm and prevents the recruitment of IRGs.[140,301] The ROP kinase family is highly expanded in *T. gondii*, comprising 44 other proteins, many of which lack critical catalytic residues and are thought to function as regulatory "pseudokinases." Interestingly, ROP kinases are absent from the related apicomplexan *Plasmodium* spp., presumably because prevention of IRG recruitment is unnecessary within the protected niche of the host erythrocyte.

Viral Cell Entry

Viruses have developed a specialized family of proteins that specifically function to engage host cell proteins and fuse with cell membranes and that allow for transfer of viral genetic material. The details regarding structure and function of these proteins are reviewed elsewhere.[168] There are two known classes of viral fusion proteins: class I proteins form a hairpin structure with a known α-helix domain (e.g., HIV gp41, influenza HA2), and class II proteins exist in β-sheets and transition from a moderately stable dimeric form to a very stable trimer (e.g., dengue E protein). These fusion proteins undergo conformational changes when transitioning from the prefusion to the postfusion state, resulting in a more stable form that favors the process of viral fusion and entry.

Cell-to-Cell Spread

Movement from one cell to another may help an organism gain a stronger foothold in host tissues. *L. monocytogenes* is one example of a pathogen capable of cell-to-cell spread. Once this organism is free in the cytoplasm, actin begins to polymerize on the bacterial surface. Eventually the condensed actin forms a polar tail or comet, which propels the organism through the cytoplasm and into adjacent cells. The rate of bacterial movement within a cell correlates with actin tail length.[305] Actin accumulation and condensation is mediated by the *L. monocytogenes* ActA protein, which is tightly anchored to the bacterial surface and is expressed asymmetrically over the length of the organism.[283,304] ActA is the sole *Listeria* factor required for actin polymerization because actin tails form in *Xenopus* cytoplasmic extracts containing ActA-coated beads. However, in these experiments, motility occurs only when ActA is distributed asymmetrically on the beads.[30] ActA appears to interact directly with actin and also with a variety of other host cytoskeletal proteins.[90,306] Cytochalasin D is an inhibitor of actin polymerization and inhibits the cell-to-cell spread of *L. monocytogenes* in epithelial monolayers.[58,210]

On reaching the plasma membrane, bacteria protrude from the cell in filopodium-like structures (called listeriopods), which are then engulfed by neighboring cells. This engulfment may be part of a normal host process because MDCK cells demonstrate low-level endocytosis of adjacent cell membrane fragments even in the absence of bacteria.[261] The formation of listeriopods and the engulfment of these structures by neighboring cells are independent of listeriolysin O, PI-PLC, and PC-PLC.[98] Once inside a nascently infected cell, *Listeria* escapes from the double-membrane vacuole via the action of PI-PLC, PC-PLC, and Mpl.[90] On arrival in the cytosol, bacteria can enter another cycle of actin-based motility and cell-to-cell spread, although one or two bacterial generations may be necessary to regain motility.[261]

A second pathogen capable of actin-based motility and cell-to-cell spread is *Shigella flexneri*. In *Shigella*, a single protein called IcsA is sufficient to induce formation of an actin tail, similar to that observed in *L. monocytogenes*. IcsA is an autotransporter protein that is encoded on the *Shigella* virulence plasmid and is distributed on the bacterial surface in a polarized fashion, possibly as a result of specialized machinery for autotransporter protein secretion near the poles of some gram-negative bacteria.[151] Initially, IcsA is distributed over the whole bacterial surface, with a predominance at one pole. However, over time a secreted bacterial protease called IcsP cleaves roughly half of the surface IcsA, mostly at the opposite pole, further polarizing distribution.[74,292] Elimination of expression of IcsP leads to increased quantities of IcsA and increased actin-based motility, suggesting that IcsA (rather than host factors) is rate limiting in the motility process.[274] Like ActA, IcsA is necessary and sufficient to induce polymerization of the actin tail, and

the tail forms at the end where IcsA concentration is highest.[102] Despite the functional similarities between IcsA and ActA, there is no significant sequence homology between the two proteins. In contrast to ActA, no direct interaction between IcsA and actin has been demonstrated, and IcsA is found throughout the actin tail, not only at the bacterial pole–actin tail junction.

When considering cell-to-cell spread of viruses, it is helpful to return to the example of HCV. Claudin-1 and occludin-1 are the gap junction proteins that serve as the final entry point for this virus.[78,248] It has been demonstrated that HCV can infect neighboring liver cells directly via these gap junction proteins, likely bypassing the extracellular release of virus and subsequent SR-B1 and CD81 binding steps.[309] Experiments have demonstrated that antibodies blocking the E2–CD81 interaction inhibit infection from virus-infected media but do not affect infection of naïve cells when co-cultured with previously HCV-infected cells.[309] It has also been shown that after infecting a liver cell, HCV promotes breakdown of typical apical to basal organization of liver cells, exposing the gap junction complexes and presumably facilitating cell-to-cell spread.[199,200]

DAMAGE TO THE HOST

Damage to host cells and host tissues represents a fundamental mechanism by which a pathogen is able to survive at a given site and then spread within a host. Generally, damage is induced by microbial toxins. Most toxins are released extracellularly and are capable of inducing damage at very low concentrations *(exotoxins).* Microbial attachment and invasion facilitate toxin delivery to target cells and target tissues and serve to enhance toxicity.

Historically, microbial toxins have been classified according to a variety of criteria, including cellular target of action (e.g., enterotoxins, leukotoxins, neurotoxins), mechanism of action (e.g., adenosine diphosphate [ADP]–ribosylating toxins, adenylate cyclase toxins, pore-forming toxins, proteolytic toxins), and major biologic effect (e.g., hemolytic toxins, edema-producing toxins). In recent years the term *toxin* has been applied more broadly to include enzymes that mediate damaging effects via phospholipase or hyaluronidase activity.

Bordetella pertussis Toxins

Whooping cough (*B. pertussis* infection) is a classic example of a toxin-mediated disease and involves the interplay of multiple toxins.[165] The pathogenesis of whooping cough begins with *B. pertussis* colonization of the trachea, which is facilitated by a molecule called tracheal cytotoxin (TCT). TCT is a naturally occurring disaccharide-tetrapeptide fragment of peptidoglycan and belongs to the family of muramyl peptides.[103] Many gram-negative organisms produce an analogous fragment during normal turnover of cell wall components, but significant extracellular release appears to occur only in *Bordetella* species and gonococci. In most other species an inner membrane protein called AmpG recycles this fragment back into the bacterial cell.[50] TCT is toxic to tracheal epithelial cells in vitro, stimulating nitric oxide synthase and local production of interleukin-1 and causing inhibition of ciliary motility, inhibition of DNA synthesis, and cell death.[117–119,124] During natural infection, TCT is thought to paralyze the mucociliary escalator and thereby interfere with clearance of *B. pertussis* and respiratory mucus.

Pertussis toxin is believed to be a key determinant of the clinical manifestations of whooping cough. This toxin belongs to a family of bacterial ADP-ribosyltransferase enzymes. The target of pertussis toxin is host cell G proteins, resulting in disruption of normal signaling processes. A number of biologic effects have been ascribed to pertussis toxin, including induction of lymphocytosis, stimulation of insulin release, sensitization to histamine, and disruption of phagocytic cell function; however, the specific relationship between the effects of pertussis toxin and the symptoms of whooping cough remains unclear.[125] Of note, *B. parapertussis* is closely related to *B. pertussis* and produces a similar cough illness but fails to produce pertussis toxin because of mutations in the *ptx* promoter region.[218]

B. pertussis also elaborates a toxin called adenylate cyclase toxin (CyaA), a member of the RTX (repeat-in-toxin) family of bacterial cytolysins whose prototype is the *E. coli* hemolysin HlyA.[50] These toxins cause target cell lysis by creating pores in the host cell plasma membrane, but at sublytic concentrations many of these toxins also manipulate host enzymatic and signaling pathways within the host cell. In the case of *B. pertussis,* CyaA inhibits host adenylate cyclase, resulting in accumulation of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP); elevated levels of cAMP within phagocytic cells inhibit oxidative activity and induce apoptosis, thus disabling this arm of the immune system.[166,167,243] In respiratory epithelial cells, elevated cAMP may result in increased fluid and mucus secretion, further impairing mucociliary function.

Among other examples of these dual-function RTX toxins, the prototypic HlyA of uropathogenic *E. coli* induces the degradation of host actin-associated proteins, resulting in exfoliation of the superficial epithelial layer in the bladder.[64] The α-hemolysin of contemporary community-associated *S. aureus* strains activates a host epithelial cell surface molecule called ADAM10, which cleaves E-cadherin at cell–cell junctions to permit access of the pathogen across the epithelial layer.[143,332]

Hemolytic-Uremic Syndrome and Shiga Toxins

A number of intestinal pathogens produce Shiga toxins, including *Shigella dysenteriae,* enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (including *E. coli* O157:H7), and *Citrobacter freundii,* among others. Shiga toxins are classic A-B toxins, consisting of an A subunit that has toxic activity and five B subunits arranged in a pentameric ring-like structure that promotes binding to host cells and delivery of the A subunit. The B subunits interact with host cell globoseries glycolipids, especially the Pk trisaccharide moiety of globotriaosylceramide (GbO3). The A subunit is endocytosed by the host cell and traverses the cytoplasm in membrane-bound vesicles. Some of these vesicles travel in a retrograde fashion to the Golgi apparatus and then to the endoplasmic reticulum.[269] Shiga toxin then co-opts the function of the endoplasmic reticulum proteins HEDJ and BiP to enter the cytosol, where it enzymatically inhibits host 28S ribosomal RNA by cleaving a single adenine residue, resulting in inhibition of protein synthesis and cell death.[269,347]

In humans, *E. coli* O157:H7 is an important cause of hemorrhagic colitis and sometimes produces hemolytic-uremic syndrome. Infection begins with adherence to epithelial cells via intimin and other proteins encoded by the locus of enterocyte effacement (LEE), resulting in formation of attaching and effacing lesions analogous to those observed in EPEC infection.[196] After adherence, the organism releases Shiga toxin, which traverses the intestinal epithelial cell and enters the bloodstream.[2] Toxin circulates to distant organs and mediates damage via toxicity to endothelium. Diarrhea likely results from damage to endothelium in small mesenteric vessels, leading to ischemia and sloughing of the intestinal mucosa. The renal effects observed in human hemolytic-uremic syndrome arise from microvascular and glomerular damage with luminal occlusion by fibrin and platelets.[353] Hemolysis and thrombocytopenia likely develop as a consequence of microangiopathy.

Tissue-Degrading Toxins

A number of toxins have enzymatic activity and are capable of degrading tissue components. One example is hyaluronidase, which degrades hyaluronic acid, a repeating disaccharide glycosaminoglycan involved in cell motility, adhesion, and proliferation in normal hosts. Hyaluronic acid contains alternating *N*-acetylglucosamine and glucuronic acid moieties, connected by β linkages. It is prominent in extracellular matrix when cell turnover and tissue repair are prominent—for example, in embryogenesis, wound healing, and carcinogenesis.[55] The primary host receptor for hyaluronic acid is CD44, which undergoes post-translational modification that varies according to host cell type. Interactions between hyaluronic acid and CD44 are critical to T- and B-cell stimulation, growth of certain lymphoid malignancies, and propagation of certain inflammatory responses.[207]

In *S. pyogenes,* hyaluronidase is a 96-kDa protein that is encoded by the *hylA* gene and is released extracellularly. It is proposed to promote invasion through cell layers and tissue planes and is considered one of several *S. pyogenes* spreading factors.[141] Interestingly, *S. pyogenes* also produces a thick "capsule" of hyaluronic acid that can interact with other host cellular and extracellular matrix proteins to contribute to tissue invasion by the organism. Other pathogens that produce a hyaluronidase include *S. agalactiae* (group B streptococcus),

Treponema pallidum, Candida spp., *Entamoeba histolytica,* and *Ancylostoma braziliense.*[55]

EVASION OF IMMUNITY

To survive and replicate within the host, a pathogen must evade the host immune system. Initially the organism must circumvent innate immune mechanisms, including mechanical forces, resident phagocytes, and complement activity. Over time the organism must overcome adaptive immunity as well, including the presence of specific antibodies.

Antiphagocytic Factors

As described earlier in this chapter, invasin-mediated entry into M cells plays an important role in the early stages of *Yersinia* infection. At the same time, evasion of phagocytosis is critical to the pathogenesis of *Yersinia* disease. The ability to avoid phagocytosis is dependent on the *Yersinia* virulence plasmid, which encodes a number of proteins called Yops.[48,295] Both YopE and YopH interfere with ingestion by macrophages and neutrophils via slightly different mechanisms. YopE shares sequence homology with the *Salmonella typhimurium* SptP protein and downregulates all three of the Rho GTPases (Rho, Cdc42, and Rac), thus inhibiting actin rearrangement and blocking formation of membrane ruffles (lamellipodia) and spikes (filopodia).[3,19] YopH is a protein tyrosine phosphorylase that appears to act on a host cell cytosolic protein called Cas, interfering with recruitment of Rho, Cdc42, and Rac and preventing formation of actin stress fibers, focal complexes, and focal adhesions.[14,18] YopJ is an acetyltransferase that covalently modifies and inactivates intermediate kinases in the mitogen-activated protein kinase and NF-κB signaling pathways, leading to host cell apoptosis.[212,345] Importantly some Yop effectors also represent important immunogens; for example, the immunodominant epitope of YopE represents a major $CD8^+$ T-cell antigen in experimental plague and may facilitate a new direction in *Yersinia* vaccine development.[182,350]

Shigella employs another strategy to induce apoptosis in phagocytic cells. This pathogen produces hemorrhagic enterocolitis and is an important cause of bloody diarrhea in children. Infection begins with ingestion of organisms, which attach to intestinal M cells and then cross the intestinal epithelium.[356] On entry into the subepithelial space, organisms are engulfed by resident macrophages and contained in membrane-bound vacuoles. However, they quickly escape from macrophage vacuoles and move to the cytosol of the cell, where they induce apoptosis.[355] The mechanism of apoptosis involves a protein called IpaB, which is encoded by the *Shigella* virulence plasmid and is injected into host cell membranes via the *Shigella* type III secretion system.[20] Work by Zychlinsky and coworkers showed that IpaB binds to cytosolic interleukin-1β converting enzyme (caspase-1), a cysteine protease that cleaves IL-1β to its active form.[126] Of note, the *S. typhimurium* SipB protein shares homology with IpaB and also induces apoptosis by interacting with caspase-1.[123] Interestingly, recent work has shown that IpaB has contrasting effects in epithelial cells, binding to the cell-cycle regulator Mad2L2 to inhibit epithelial turnover and promoting epithelial colonization with *Shigella.*[148]

Evasion of Complement Activity

S. pyogenes expresses at least three factors that interfere with host complement activity. Perhaps best known is M protein, which inhibits activation of the alternative complement pathway. This effect is mediated at least in part by the ability of M protein to bind complement factor H, a regulatory protein that inhibits assembly and accelerates decay of C3bBb. Recent studies indicate that serotype M1 and M57 strains express an extracellular protein called Sic (streptococcal inhibitor of complement-mediated lysis), which associates with human plasma proteins called clusterin and histidine-rich glycoprotein (HRG) and apparently blocks formation of the membrane attack complex (C5b-C9).[4] Studies of epidemic waves of M1 infection demonstrate that Sic undergoes significant variation over time, perhaps in response to the selective pressure associated with specific antibodies.[129,130,201] Of note, nonpolar inactivation of *sic* results in reduced mucosal colonization of mice.[185] In addition, *S. pyogenes* produces a serine protease called C5a peptidase, which cleaves and inactivates C5a.[330] C5a is a cleavage product of C5 and serves as a powerful chemoattractant for neutrophils; thus, streptococcal C5a peptidase serves to attenuate the neutrophil response to infection.

N. gonorrhoeae is a common cause of cervicitis, urethritis, and pelvic inflammatory disease and is also capable of producing disseminated disease. Recent spread of antibiotic resistance in this pathogen highlights the need for understanding its pathogenic mechanisms to develop new mitigating strategies. Resistance to complement-mediated killing is important in gonococcal pathogenesis and is due in part to sialylation of lipo-oligosaccharide (LOS), which involves addition of host-derived cytidine monophospho-*N*-acetylneuraminic acid (CMP-NANA) by a bacterial sialyltransferase. Given the requirement for CMP-NANA, subcultivation in the absence of human serum or human neutrophils is associated with loss of sialylation and loss of resistance. Sialylated LOS binds factor H, resulting in downregulation of activity of the alternative pathway C3 convertase. In addition, sialylated LOS interferes with neutrophil phagocytosis and with the normal oxidative burst in neutrophils.[260,329] A second determinant of resistance to complement-mediated killing is Por1, an outer membrane porin protein that binds both factor H and C4b binding protein (C4b BP).[255] C4b BP binds C4b and serves to inhibit assembly and accelerate decay of C4b2a, the classical pathway C3 convertase. Gonococci also produce a third factor that influences resistance to complement—namely, an outer membrane-expressed nitrite reductase called AniA.[21,31]

Evasion of Humoral Immunity

A number of pathogens have evolved mechanisms to vary surface-exposed immunogenic molecules, thus facilitating evasion of a specific antibody response. *Antigenic variation* represents one such mechanism and is characterized by the emergence of modified molecules with novel antigenic properties. *Phase variation* represents a second such mechanism and is typified by the reversible loss or gain of a given molecule or structure.

N. gonorrhoeae is capable of producing recurrent infection, reflecting the fact that the antibody response to infection fails to provide lasting immunity. In this context, it is noteworthy that *N. gonorrhoeae* pili are an important target of serum antibody and undergo frequent antigenic variation. Gonococcal pilin expression is controlled by the *pilE* locus (the expression locus), which contains an intact pilin gene along with promoter sequences. In addition to *pilE,* the gonococcal chromosome contains numerous copies of variant *pil* sequences, called *pilS* loci.[110] These loci are transcriptionally inactive because they lack a promoter and 5′ coding sequence. However, they can be introduced into the expression locus by RecA-dependent recombination, resulting in an altered structural subunit and antigenically variant pili.[136] Because *N. gonorrhoeae* is naturally transformable, horizontal exchange of species-specific DNA may also give rise to new *pil* sequences.

The African trypanosomes (including *Trypanosoma brucei*) are parasites that cause sleeping sickness in sub-Saharan Africa and account for more than 50,000 deaths per year. These organisms are able to avoid humoral immunity by antigenic variation of a large family of proteins called variable surface glycoproteins (VSGs), which coat the entire surface of the trypanosome. VSGs are highly immunogenic and stimulate antibodies that lead to efficient and rapid clearing of parasites from the bloodstream. However, at any given point in time, the organism is able to express a new VSG, allowing some organisms to escape the antibody response against the previous VSG. Each parasite can express more than 100 different VSGs, with variation in expression occurring spontaneously at a rate of up to 10^{-2} per cell per generation. Overall, the genome of *T. brucei* contains more than 1000 *vsg* genes, including so-called expression sites (ESs) located near telomeres on minichromosomes and silent loci in nontelomeric sites on large chromosomes.[241,310] In general, VSG antigenic variation occurs by two different mechanisms. The first is called in situ activation and involves the simultaneous activation of a new ES and inactivation of the old ES, occurring independently of DNA rearrangement. The second involves DNA recombination, either between the expressed *vsg* and another telomeric ES (reciprocal recombination) or between the expressed *vsg* and a silent *vsg* locus (gene conversion).[310]

In the case of *H. influenzae,* lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is likely a key factor in facilitating colonization and is also a major target of the antibody response to infection. Interestingly, *H. influenzae* LPS undergoes phase variation. LPS biosynthesis involves multiple enzymatic steps and a number of genes. Among these genes, *lic1A, lic2A, lic3A, lex-2, lgtC,* and an *oafA*-like gene contain long stretches of tandem four-base pair repeats within their 5′ coding region. In studies of the *lic* loci, Weiser and coworkers observed that the number of repeats varies spontaneously, generating translational frameshifts with different ATG start codons falling in or out of frame.[324] Such frameshifts result in synthesis of a protein with a different N terminus or eliminate protein production altogether (when no in-frame start codon exists). The mechanism of variation in repeat number is presumed to be slipped-strand mispairing, which occurs during DNA replication and involves a single repeat looping out on either the template or the replicating strand. Changes in *lic2A* and *lic3A* influence glycotransferase activity and alter reactivity with monoclonal antibodies directed against specific LPS oligosaccharide epitopes.[108] The *lic2A* gene product is responsible for the addition of a Gal-α1,4-Gal moiety, which resembles the globoseries glycolipids and protects *H. influenzae* from antibody-mediated killing, possibly by molecular mimicry.[325] *lgtC* may be involved in formation of a Gal-β1,4-Glu moiety.[132] Variation in the *lic1A* gene affects production of a choline kinase responsible for addition of phosphorylcholine to the LPS molecule, a physical change that enhances binding of C-reactive protein and results in susceptibility to serum bactericidal activity.[187,326,327] Expression of *lex2* results in addition of a tetrasaccharide (Gal-α1,4-Gal-β1,4-Glc-β1,4-Glc) to the proximal heptose in LPS and increases resistance to complement-mediated serum killing.[105] Similarly, expression of the *oafA*-like gene results in LPS *O*-acetylation, which facilitates resistance to serum killing.[88]

Recent studies of hepatitis A virus (HAV) have identified a novel mechanism by which viruses can evade humoral responses. HAV was long considered to be nonenveloped, a characteristic that seemed well suited to promote fecal-oral transmission. However, elegant centrifugation studies demonstrated that HAV features an envelope as it exits an infected cell.[80] The enveloped HAV particle (eHAV) is fully infectious. Formation of eHAV requires proteins involved in host cell exosome formation (VPS4B and ALIX), suggesting that HAV has co-opted these pathways to facilitate spread. While temporary, this enveloped form of HAV is fully protected from neutralizing antibodies and likely facilitates cell-to-cell spread in the liver. Following these studies of HAV, additional viruses have been observed to generate a temporary envelope, indicating an established strategy for viruses to evade humoral responses.[253]

Encapsulation

Expression of an extracellular capsule represents a common strategy to evade phagocytosis, complement activity, and humoral immunity among pathogenic bacteria, fungi, and parasites. One example is *H. influenzae,* a common cause of childhood bacteremia and meningitis in underdeveloped countries. Among isolates of *H. influenzae,* six structurally and antigenically distinct capsular types are recognized, designated serotypes a to f. Historically, serotype b isolates accounted for more than 95% of all *H. influenzae* invasive disease, reflecting the distinct virulence properties of the type b capsule, which is a polymer of ribose and ribitol-5-phosphate (PRP) and is encoded by the *cap*b locus.[211] In animal studies comparing derivatives of *H. influenzae* strain Rd expressing type a, b, c, d, e, or f capsule, the strain expressing the type b capsule was associated with the highest incidence of bacteremia after intranasal inoculation of infant rats. Similarly, this strain was associated with the highest magnitude of bacteremia and incidence of meningitis after intraperitoneal inoculation of experimental rats.[354]

In considering the mechanism by which the type b capsule promotes intravascular survival and invasive disease, in vitro studies using mouse peritoneal macrophages and human peripheral blood monocytes provide some insights. The type b capsule inhibits bacterial binding to macrophages in the absence of complement and a source of C3.[223] In addition, the type b capsule interferes with ingestion by macrophages when anti-PRP antibody is lacking.[223,222] Furthermore the type b capsule blocks complement deposition on the bacterial surface and resultant complement-mediated bacteriolysis. In almost all isolates of *H. influenzae* type b, the *cap*b locus is a tandem repeat of 18-kb *cap*b gene sequences.[221] As a consequence of this arrangement, the *cap*b locus serves as a template for further amplification of capsule gene sequences in vivo, resulting in increased capsule production. In a study by Corn and colleagues, 23 of 66 minimally passaged invasive isolates had between three and five copies of the 18-kb repeat.[47] Further analysis demonstrated that amplification of the repeat results in augmented resistance to phagocytosis and complement-mediated bacterial killing.[221] The importance of the type b capsule in disease pathogenesis was recognized in vaccine development efforts, and the routine implementation of the Hib polysaccharide-conjugate vaccine in many countries has sharply curtailed the incidence of invasive Hib disease.

Capsule production is also a critical virulence determinant for a number of disease-causing fungi, including the opportunistic pathogen *Cryptococcus neoformans,* which causes infections primarily in HIV-infected and other immunocompromised hosts. *C. neoformans* elaborates a thick polysaccharide capsule that is the basis for the classic "halo" appearance of the organism upon India ink staining of cerebrospinal fluid in patients with cryptococcal meningitis. The capsule comprises a complex polymer with a galactose backbone modified by xylose, mannose, and glucuronic acid. The enzymes responsible for assembly have begun to be identified, suggesting new possible targets for new antifungal development.[170,257] However, several elements required for capsule biosynthesis remain to be elucidated, and major questions persist regarding the spatial organization of capsule components and the basis for interstrain variation in the chemical structure and antibody reactivity of the galactoxylomannan backbone.[68]

Viral Immune Suppression and Latency

Infection with HCV is a potent inducer of interferon-stimulated gene expression (as with other viruses).[331] However, HCV has evolved several mechanisms to evade host innate immune responses. The viral protease NS3-NS4A interferes with nuclear localization of interferon regulatory factor-3 (IRF-3) in response to interferon in HCV-infected hepatocytes.[89] This disruption of IRF-3 signaling, which prevents cells from activating antiviral genes downstream of IRF-3, results from specific cleavage of the molecule IPS-1.[181] Similar observations regarding evasion of innate immunity have been made with the influenzavirus NS1 protein and with West Nile virus and HIV.[67,69,334]

Among some other viral pathogens, *latency* represents an important mechanism for persistence in the presence of host immunity, especially in the case of viruses belonging to the herpesvirus family. Herpes simplex viruses (HSV types 1 and 2) commonly establish latency after either gingivostomatitis or genital tract infection. After infection of a host cell, HSV replication begins. Eventually cell death occurs, resulting in cell lysis and release of viral particles, which can then infect adjacent cells. This so-called lytic replication cycle is under control of a small number of immediate early (IE) genes, which must be transcribed in moderate amounts to allow expression of the remainder of the viral genome. IE gene expression is activated by VP16, a viral protein that binds to a sequence common to IE gene promoters.[252] After lysis of the host cell, new virions enter local nerve termini and travel up the long axon to sensory ganglia, where latency is established within days. In the latent state, viral DNA can be detected in the neuron, but infectious virions cannot be isolated. During latency,[217] IE genes are repressed and only one fragment of viral DNA is actively transcribed, yielding several latency-associated transcripts (LATs) via alternative splicing.[348] No protein product has been definitively attributed to the LAT; instead, recent work has demonstrated HSV-1 production of microRNAs, transcribed from LAT exons, that promote latency by inhibiting transforming growth factor-β signaling, favoring survival of infected cells and regulating the expression of activation-associated viral genes.[56,109,315] LAT-deficient mutants are still able to establish initial latency, suggesting that IE gene expression may be under multiple controls.[320] The mechanism by which HSV is reactivated is an area of intense study and some controversy. Host cellular mechanisms may provide the inciting signals, and the actions of viral thymidine kinase and the protein ICP0 are required for a return to lytic replication.[217]

CONCLUSION

With the proliferation of molecular techniques in recent years, our understanding of the specific microbial and host factors involved in the pathogenesis of a variety of infectious diseases continues to expand remarkably. As a consequence of this understanding, we have witnessed the development of new vaccines and potential targets for antivirulence therapeutics. In the coming years, it is likely that advances in immunology and microbial pathogenesis will inform novel approaches for treating and preventing human infections. Examples might include inhibitors of type III protein secretion systems,[149] antagonists of periplasmic chaperones, analogs of important host cell receptors, and vaccine adjuvants that direct polarization of T-cell responses. However, given the impressive adaptability of human pathogens, as new therapeutic agents become available, we must remain vigilant for new microbial strategies allowing evasion of our interventions.

NEW REFERENCES SINCE THE SEVENTH EDITION

7. Avril M, Tripathi AK, Brazier AJ, et al. A restricted subset of var genes mediates adherence of *Plasmodium falciparum*-infected erythrocytes to brain endothelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2012;109:E1782-E1790.
11. Barocchi MA, Ries J, Zogaj X, et al. A pneumococcal pilus influences virulence and host inflammatory responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2006;103:2857-2862.
32. Carruthers MD, Tracy EN, Dickson AC, et al. Biological roles of nontypeable *Haemophilus influenzae* type IV pilus proteins encoded by the pil and com operons. *J Bacteriol*. 2012;194:1927-1933.
38. Claessens A, Adams Y, Ghumra A, et al. A subset of group A-like var genes encodes the malaria parasite ligands for binding to human brain endothelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2012;109:E1772-E1781.
54. Crosnier C, Bustamante LY, Bartholdson SJ, et al. Basigin is a receptor essential for erythrocyte invasion by *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Nature*. 2011;480:534-537.
72. Douglas AD, Baldeviano GC, Lucas CM, et al. A PfRH5-based vaccine is efficacious against heterologous strain blood-stage *Plasmodium falciparum* infection in Aotus monkeys. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2015;17:130-139.
80. Feng Z, Hensley L, McKnight KL, et al. A pathogenic picornavirus acquires an envelope by hijacking cellular membranes. *Nature*. 2013;496:367-371.
104. Grass S, Rempe KA, St. Geme JW III. Structural determinants of the interaction between the TpsA and TpsB proteins in the *Haemophilus influenzae* HMW1 two-partner secretion system. *J Bacteriol*. 2015;197:1769-1780.
140. Hunter CA, Sibley LD. Modulation of innate immunity by *Toxoplasma gondii* virulence effectors. *Nat Rev Microbiol*. 2012;10:766-778.
171. Kraemer SM, Smith JD. A family affair: var genes, PfEMP1 binding, and malaria disease. *Curr Opin Microbiol*. 2006;9:374-380.
177. Lavstsen T, Turner L, Saguti F, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein 1 domain cassettes 8 and 13 are associated with severe malaria in children. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2012;109:E1791-E1800.
209. Milner DA Jr, Whitten RO, Kamiza S, et al. The systemic pathology of cerebral malaria in African children. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol*. 2014;4:104.
216. Nelson AL, Ries J, Bagnoli F, et al. RrgA is a pilus-associated adhesin in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. *Mol Microbiol*. 2007;66:329-340.
240. Paul AS, Egan ES, Duraisingh MT. Host-parasite interactions that guide red blood cell invasion by malaria parasites. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2015;22:220-226.
253. Qi Y, Zhang F, Zhang L, et al. Hepatitis E virus produced from cell culture has a lipid envelope. *PLoS ONE*. 2015;10:e0132503.
301. Taylor S, Barragan A, Su C, et al. A secreted serine-threonine kinase determines virulence in the eukaryotic pathogen *Toxoplasma gondii*. *Science*. 2006;314:1776-1780.
303. Tham WH, Healer J, Cowman AF. Erythrocyte and reticulocyte binding-like proteins of *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Trends Parasitol*. 2012;28:23-30.
312. Tran TM, Ongoiba A, Coursen J, et al. Naturally acquired antibodies specific for *Plasmodium falciparum* reticulocyte-binding protein homologue 5 inhibit parasite growth and predict protection from malaria. *J Infect Dis*. 2014;209:789-798.
314. Turner L, Lavstsen T, Berger SS, et al. Severe malaria is associated with parasite binding to endothelial protein C receptor. *Nature*. 2013;498:502-505.

The full reference list for this chapter is available at ExpertConsult.com.

REFERENCES

1. Abrahams GL, Hensel M. Manipulating cellular transport and immune responses: dynamic interactions between intracellular *Salmonella enterica* and its host cells. *Cell Microbiol*. 2006;8:728-737.
2. Acheson DW, Moore R, De Breucker S, et al. Translocation of Shiga toxin across polarized intestinal cells in tissue culture. *Infect Immun*. 1996;64:3294-3300.
3. Aepfelbacher M, Roppenser B, Hentschke M, et al. Activity modulation of the bacterial Rho GAP YopE: an inspiration for the investigation of mammalian Rho GAPs. *Eur J Cell Biol*. 2011;90:951-954.
4. Åkesson P, Sjoholm AG, Bjorck L. Protein SIC, a novel extracellular protein of *Streptococcus pyogenes* interfering with complement function. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:1081-1088.
5. Altier C. Genetic and environmental control of *Salmonella* invasion. *J Microbiol*. 2005;(43 Spec No):85-92.
6. Anderson GG, Palermo JJ, Schilling JD, et al. Intracellular bacterial biofilm-like pods in urinary tract infections. *Science*. 2003;301:105-107.
7. Avril M, Tripathi AK, Brazier AJ, et al. A restricted subset of var genes mediates adherence of *Plasmodium falciparum*-infected erythrocytes to brain endothelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2012;109:E1782-E1790.
8. Balcewicz-Sablinska MK, Keane J, Kornfeld H, et al. Pathogenic *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* evades apoptosis of host macrophages by release of TNF-R2, resulting in inactivation of TNF-α. *J Immunol*. 1998;161:2636-2641.
9. Barenkamp SJ, St Geme JW. Genes encoding high-molecular-weight adhesion proteins of nontypeable *Haemophilus influenzae* are part of gene clusters. *Infect Immun*. 1994;62:3320-3328.
10. Barki M, Koltin Y, Yanko M, et al. Isolation of a *Candida albicans* DNA sequence conferring adhesion and aggregation on *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. *J Bacteriol*. 1993;175:5683-5689.
11. Barocchi MA, Ries J, Zogaj X, et al. A pneumococcal pilus influences virulence and host inflammatory responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2006;103:2857-2862.
12. Bergelson JM, Cunningham JA, Droguett G, et al. Isolation of a common receptor for Coxsackie B viruses and adenoviruses 2 and 5. *Science*. 1997;275:1320-1323.
13. Birmingham CL, Canadien V, Kaniuk NA, et al. Listeriolysin O allows *Listeria* monocytogenes replication in macrophage vacuoles. *Nature*. 2008;451:350-354.
14. Black DS, Bliska JB. Identification of p130Cas as a substrate of *Yersinia* YopH (Yop51), a bacterial protein tyrosine phosphatase that translocates into mammalian cells and targets focal adhesions. *EMBO J*. 1997;16:2730-2744.
15. Blanc-Potard AB, Groisman EA. The *Salmonella selC* locus contains a pathogenicity island mediating intramacrophage survival. *EMBO J*. 1997;16:5376-5385.
16. Blanc-Potard AB, Lafay B. MgtC as a horizontally-acquired virulence factor of intracellular bacterial pathogens: evidence from molecular phylogeny and comparative genomics. *J Mol Evol*. 2003;57:479-486.
17. Blanc-Potard AB, Solomon F, Kayser J, et al. The SPI-3 pathogenicity island of *Salmonella enterica*. *J Bacteriol*. 1999;181:998-1004.
18. Bliska JB. Yop effectors of *Yersinia* spp. and actin rearrangements. *Trends Microbiol*. 2000;8:205-208.
19. Bliska JB, Falkow S. Bacterial resistance to complement killing mediated by the Ail protein of *Yersinia enterocolitica*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1992;89:3561-3565.
20. Blocker A, Gounon P, Larquet E, et al. The tripartite type III secreton of *Shigella flexneri* inserts IpaB and IpaC into host membranes. *J Cell Biol*. 1999;147:683-693.
21. Boulanger MJ, Murphy ME. Crystal structure of the soluble domain of the major anaerobically induced outer membrane protein (AniA) from pathogenic *Neisseria*: a new class of copper-containing nitrite reductases. *J Mol Biol*. 2002;315:1111-1127.
22. Boyd AP, Cornelis GR. Yersinia. In: Groisman EA, ed. *Principles of Bacterial Pathogenesis*. San Diego: Academic Press; 2001:227-264.
23. Bradway SD, Levine MJ. Do proline-rich proteins modulate a transglutaminase catalyzed mechanism of candidal adhesion? *Crit Rev Oral Biol Med*. 1993;4:293-299.
24. Braun L, Nato F, Payrastre B, et al. The 213-amino-acid leucine-rich repeat region of the *Listeria monocytogenes* InlB protein is sufficient for entry into mammalian cells, stimulation of PI 3-kinase and membrane ruffling. *Mol Microbiol*. 1999;34:10-23.
25. Breimer ME, Karlsson KA. Chemical and immunological identification of glycolipid-based blood group ABH and Lewis antigens in human kidney. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 1983;755:170-177.
26. Brown NF, Vallance BA, Coombes BK, et al. *Salmonella* pathogenicity island 2 is expressed prior to penetrating the intestine. *PLoS Pathog*. 2005;1:e32.
27. Bu S, Li Y, Zhou M, et al. Interaction between two putative glycosyltransferases is required for glycosylation of a serine-rich streptococcal adhesin. *J Bacteriol*. 2008;190:1256-1266.
28. Buchmeier N, Blanc-Potard A, Ehrt S, et al. A parallel intraphagosomal survival strategy shared by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and *Salmonella enterica*. *Mol Microbiol*. 2000;35:1375-1382.
29. Burnette-Curley D, Wells V, Viscount H, et al. FimA, a major virulence factor associated with *Streptococcus parasanguis* endocarditis. *Infect Immun*. 1995;63:4669-4674.
30. Cameron LA, Footer MJ, van Oudenaarden A, et al. Motility of ActA protein-coated microspheres driven by actin polymerization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1999;96:4908-4913.
31. Cardinale JA, Clark VL. Expression of AniA, the major anaerobically induced outer membrane protein of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, provides protection against killing by normal human sera. *Infect Immun*. 2000;68:4368-4369.
32. Carruthers MD, Tracy EN, Dickson AC, et al. Biological roles of nontypeable *Haemophilus influenzae* type IV pilus proteins encoded by the pil and com operons. *J Bacteriol*. 2012;194:1927-1933.
33. Castric P, Cassels FJ, Carlson RW. Structural characterization of the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 1244 pilin glycan. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:26479-26485.
34. Catanese MT, Graziani R, von Hahn T, et al. High-avidity monoclonal antibodies against the human scavenger class B type I receptor efficiently block hepatitis C virus infection in the presence of high-density lipoprotein. *J Virol*. 2007;81:8063-8071.
35. Chen LM, Hobbie S, Galan JE. Requirement of Cdc42 for *Salmonella*-induced cytoskeletal and nuclear responses. *Science*. 1996;274:2115-2118.
36. Christensen LD, van Gennip M, Jakobsen TH, et al. Synergistic antibacterial efficacy of early combination treatment with tobramycin and quorum-sensing inhibitors against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in an intraperitoneal foreign-body infection mouse model. *J Antimicrob Chemother*. 2012;67:1198-1206.
37. Cirillo DM, Valdivia RH, Monack DM, et al. Macrophage-dependent induction of the *Salmonella* pathogenicity island 2 type III secretion system and its role in intracellular survival. *Mol Microbiol*. 1998;30:175-188.
38. Claessens A, Adams Y, Ghumra A, et al. A subset of group A-like var genes encodes the malaria parasite ligands for binding to human brain endothelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2012;109:E1772-E1781.
39. Clantin B, Delattre AS, Rucktooa P, et al. Structure of the membrane protein FhaC: a member of the Omp85-TpsB transporter superfamily. *Science*. 2007;317:957-961.
40. Clantin B, Hodak H, Willery E, et al. The crystal structure of filamentous hemagglutinin secretion domain and its implications for the two-partner secretion pathway. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2004;101:6194-6199.
41. Cochrane DM, Brown MR, Anwar H, et al. Antibody response to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* surface protein antigens in a rat model of chronic lung infection. *J Med Microbiol*. 1988;27:255-261.
42. Cohen CJ, Shieh JT, Pickles RJ, et al. The coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor is a transmembrane component of the tight junction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2001;98:15191-15196.
43. Collazo CM, Galan JE. The invasion-associated type III system of *Salmonella typhimurium* directs the translocation of Sip proteins into the host cell. *Mol Microbiol*. 1997;24:747-756.
44. Collier-Hyams LS, Zeng H, Sun J, et al. Cutting edge: *Salmonella* AvrA effector inhibits the key proinflammatory, anti-apoptotic NF-κB pathway. *J Immunol*. 2002;169:2846-2850.
45. Coombes BK, Finlay BB. Insertion of the bacterial type III translocon: not your average needle stick. *Trends Microbiol*. 2005;13:92-95.
46. Cope LD, Yogev R, Muller-Eberhard U, et al. A gene cluster involved in the utilization of both free heme and heme:hemopexin by *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. *J Bacteriol*. 1995;177:2644-2653.
47. Corn PG, Anders J, Takala AK, et al. Genes involved in *Haemophilus influenzae* type b capsule expression are frequently amplified. *J Infect Dis*. 1993;167:356-364.
48. Cornelis GR, Biot T, Lambert de Rouvroit C, et al. The *Yersinia yop* regulon. *Mol Microbiol*. 1989;3:1455-1459.
49. Costerton JW, Stewart PS, Greenberg EP. Bacterial biofilms: a common cause of persistent infections. *Science*. 1999;284:1318-1322.
50. Cotter PA, Miller JF. Bordetella. In: Groisman EA, ed. *Principles of Bacterial Pathogenesis*. San Diego: Academic Press; 2001:619-674.
51. Cotter SE, Surana NK, Grass S, et al. Trimeric autotransporters require trimerization of the passenger domain for stability and adhesive activity. *J Bacteriol*. 2006;188:5400-5407.
52. Cotter SE, Surana NK, St Geme JW III. Trimeric autotransporters: a distinct subfamily of autotransporter proteins. *Trends Microbiol*. 2005;13:199-205.
53. Coyne CB, Shen L, Turner JR, et al. Coxsackievirus entry across epithelial tight junctions requires occludin and the small GTPases Rab34 and Rab5. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2007;2:181-192.
54. Crosnier C, Bustamante LY, Bartholdson SJ, et al. Basigin is a receptor essential for erythrocyte invasion by *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Nature*. 2011;480:534-537.
55. Csoka TB, Frost GI, Stern R. Hyaluronidases in tissue invasion. *Invasion Metastasis*. 1997;17:297-311.
56. Cui C, Griffiths A, Li G, et al. Prediction and identification of herpes simplex virus 1-encoded microRNAs. *J Virol*. 2006;80:5499-5508.
57. Cutter D, Mason KW, Howell AP, et al. Immunization with *Haemophilus influenzae* Hap adhesin protects against nasopharyngeal colonization in experimental mice. *J Infect Dis*. 2002;186:1115-1121.

58. Dabiri GA, Sanger JM, Portnoy DA, et al. *Listeria monocytogenes* moves rapidly through the host-cell cytoplasm by inducing directional actin assembly. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1990;87:6068-6072.
59. Davies DG, Geesey GG. Regulation of the alginate biosynthesis gene *algC* in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* during biofilm development in continuous culture. *Appl Environ Microbiol*. 1995;61:860-867.
60. Davies DG, Parsek MR, Pearson JP, et al. The involvement of cell-to-cell signals in the development of a bacterial biofilm. *Science*. 1998;280:295-298.
61. de Groot JC, Schluter K, Carius Y, et al. Structural basis for complex formation between human IRSp53 and the translocated intimin receptor Tir of enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*. *Structure*. 2011;19:1294-1306.
62. de Roda Husman AM, Schuitemaker H. Chemokine receptors and the clinical course of HIV-1 infection. *Trends Microbiol*. 1998;6:244-249.
63. De Sordi L, Muhlschlegel FA. Quorum sensing and fungal-bacterial interactions in *Candida albicans*: a communicative network regulating microbial coexistence and virulence. *FEMS Yeast Res*. 2009;9:990-999.
64. Dhakal BK, Mulvey MA. The UPEC pore-forming toxin α-hemolysin triggers proteolysis of host proteins to disrupt cell adhesion, inflammatory, and survival pathways. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2012;11:58-69.
65. Dodson KW, Jacob-Dubuisson F, Striker RT, et al. Outer-membrane PapC molecular usher discriminately recognizes periplasmic chaperone-pilus subunit complexes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1993;90:3670-3674.
66. Dodson KW, Pinkner JS, Rose T, et al. Structural basis of the interaction of the pyelonephritic *E. coli* adhesin to its human kidney receptor. *Cell*. 2001;105:733-743.
67. Doehle BP, Hladik F, McNevin JP, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 mediates global disruption of innate antiviral signaling and immune defenses within infected cells. *J Virol*. 2009;83:10395-10405.
68. Doering TL. How sweet it is! Cell wall biogenesis and polysaccharide capsule formation in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. *Annu Rev Microbiol*. 2009;63:223-247.
69. Donelan NR, Dauber B, Wang X, et al. The N- and C-terminal domains of the NS1 protein of influenza B virus can independently inhibit IRF-3 and β-interferon promoter activation. *J Virol*. 2004;78:11574-11582.
70. Donnenberg MS, Kaper JB, Finlay BB. Interactions between enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* and host epithelial cells. *Trends Microbiol*. 1997;5:109-114.
71. Doranz BJ, Rucker J, Yi Y, et al. A dual-tropic primary HIV-1 isolate that uses fusin and the beta-chemokine receptors CKR-5, CKR-3, and CKR-2b as fusion cofactors. *Cell*. 1996;85:1149-1158.
72. Douglas AD, Baldeviano GC, Lucas CM, et al. A PfRH5-based vaccine is efficacious against heterologous strain blood-stage *Plasmodium falciparum* infection in Aotus monkeys. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2015;17:130-139.
73. Dramsi S, Caliot E, Bonne I, et al. Assembly and role of pili in group B streptococci. *Mol Microbiol*. 2006;60:1401-1413.
74. Egile C, d'Hauteville H, Parsot C, et al. SopA, the outer membrane protease responsible for polar localization of IcsA in *Shigella flexneri*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1997;23:1063-1073.
75. Eitel J, Dersch P. The YadA protein of *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* mediates high-efficiency uptake into human cells under environmental conditions in which invasin is repressed. *Infect Immun*. 2002;70:4880-4891.
76. El Tahir Y, Skurnik M. YadA, the multifaceted *Yersinia* adhesin. *Int J Med Microbiol*. 2001;291:209-218.
77. Ene IV, Bennett RJ. Hwp1 and related adhesins contribute to both mating and biofilm formation in *Candida albicans*. *Eukaryot Cell*. 2009;8:1909-1913.
78. Evans MJ, von Hahn T, Tscherne DM, et al. Claudin-1 is a hepatitis C virus co-receptor required for a late step in entry. *Nature*. 2007;446:801-805.
79. Feng Y, Broder CC, Kennedy PE, et al. HIV-1 entry cofactor: functional cDNA cloning of a seven-transmembrane, G protein–coupled receptor. *Science*. 1996;272:872-877.
80. Feng Z, Hensley L, McKnight KL, et al. A pathogenic picornavirus acquires an envelope by hijacking cellular membranes. *Nature*. 2013;496:367-371.
81. Fenno JC, Shaikh A, Spatafora G, et al. The *fimA* locus of *Streptococcus parasanguis* encodes an ATP-binding membrane transport system. *Mol Microbiol*. 1995;15:849-863.
82. Fink DL, Buscher AZ, Green B, et al. The *Haemophilus influenzae* Hap autotransporter mediates microcolony formation and adherence to epithelial cells and extracellular matrix via binding regions in the C-terminal end of the passenger domain. *Cell Microbiol*. 2003;5:175-186.
83. Fink DL, Green BA, St Geme JW III. The *Haemophilus influenzae* Hap autotransporter binds to fibronectin, laminin, and collagen IV. *Infect Immun*. 2002;70:4902-4907.
84. Fischetti VA. Streptococcal M protein: molecular design and biological behavior. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 1989;2:285-314.
85. Foster TJ, Höök M. Surface protein adhesins of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Trends Microbiol*. 1998;6:484-488.
86. Fouchier RA, Broersen SM, Brouwer M, et al. Temporal relationship between elongation of the HIV type 1 glycoprotein 120 V2 domain and the conversion toward a syncytium-inducing phenotype. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. 1995;11:1473-1478.
87. Fouchier RA, Groenink M, Kootstra NA, et al. Phenotype-associated sequence variation in the third variable domain of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120 molecule. *J Virol*. 1992;66:3183-3187.
88. Fox KL, Yildirim HH, Deadman ME, et al. Novel lipopolysaccharide biosynthetic genes containing tetranucleotide repeats in *Haemophilus influenzae*, identification of a gene for adding O-acetyl groups. *Mol Microbiol*. 2005;58:207-216.
89. Foy E, Li K, Wang C, et al. Regulation of interferon regulatory factor-3 by the hepatitis C virus serine protease. *Science*. 2003;300:1145-1148.
90. Fsihi H, Steffen P, Cossart P. Listeria monocytogenes. In: Groisman EA, ed. *Principles of Bacterial Pathogenesis*. San Diego: Academic Press; 2001:751-803.
91. Fu Y, Galan JE. A *Salmonella* protein antagonizes Rac-1 and Cdc42 to mediate host-cell recovery after bacterial invasion. *Nature*. 1999;401:293-297.
92. Galan JE. Molecular genetic bases of *Salmonella* entry into host cells. *Mol Microbiol*. 1996;20:263-271.
93. Galan JE, Wolf-Watz H. Protein delivery into eukaryotic cells by type III secretion machines. *Nature*. 2006;444:567-573.
94. Gale CA, Bendel CM, McClellan M, et al. Linkage of adhesion, filamentous growth, and virulence in *Candida albicans* to a single gene, *INT1*. *Science*. 1998;279:1355-1358.
95. Gale C, Finkel D, Tao N, et al. Cloning and expression of a gene encoding an integrin-like protein in *Candida albicans*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1996;93:357-361.
96. Galloway WR, Hodgkinson JT, Bowden SD, et al. Quorum sensing in Gram-negative bacteria: small-molecule modulation of AHL and AI-2 quorum sensing pathways. *Chem Rev*. 2011;111:28-67.
97. Gao L, Abu Kwaik Y. Hijacking of apoptotic pathways by bacterial pathogens. *Microbes Infect*. 2000;2:1705-1719.
98. Gedde MM, Higgins DE, Tilney LG, et al. Role of listeriolysin O in cell-to-cell spread of *Listeria monocytogenes*. *Infect Immun*. 2000;68:999-1003.
99. Giron JA, Ho AS, Schoolnik GK. An inducible bundle-forming pilus of enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli*. *Science*. 1991;254:710-713.
100. Glass WG, Lim JK, Cholera R, et al. Chemokine receptor CCR5 promotes leukocyte trafficking to the brain and survival in West Nile virus infection. *J Exp Med*. 2005;202:1087-1098.
101. Glass WG, McDermott DH, Lim JK, et al. CCR5 deficiency increases risk of symptomatic West Nile virus infection. *J Exp Med*. 2006;203:35-40.
102. Goldberg MB, Barzu O, Parsot C, et al. Unipolar localization and ATPase activity of IcsA, a *Shigella flexneri* protein involved in intracellular movement. *Infect Agents Dis*. 1993;2:210-211.
103. Goldman WE, Klapper DG, Baseman JB. Detection, isolation, and analysis of a released *Bordetella pertussis* product toxic to cultured tracheal cells. *Infect Immun*. 1982;36:782-794.
104. Grass S, Rempe KA, St. Geme JW III. Structural determinants of the interaction between the TpsA and TpsB proteins in the *Haemophilus influenzae* HMW1 two-partner secretion system. *J Bacteriol*. 2015;197:1769-1780.
105. Griffin R, Cox AD, Makepeace K, et al. Elucidation of the monoclonal antibody 5G8-reactive, virulence-associated lipopolysaccharide epitope of *Haemophilus influenzae* and its role in bacterial resistance to complement-mediated killing. *Infect Immun*. 2005;73:2213-2221.
106. Groenink M, Fouchier RA, Broersen S, et al. Relation of phenotype evolution of HIV-1 to envelope V2 configuration. *Science*. 1993;260:1513-1516.
107. Grundling A, Gonzalez MD, Higgins DE. Requirement of the *Listeria monocytogenes* broad-range phospholipase PC-PLC during infection of human epithelial cells. *J Bacteriol*. 2003;185:6295-6307.
108. Gulig PA, Patrick CC, Hermanstorfer L, et al. Conservation of epitopes in the oligosaccharide portion of the lipooligosaccharide of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. *Infect Immun*. 1987;55:513-520.
109. Gupta A, Gartner JJ, Sethupathy P, et al. Anti-apoptotic function of a microRNA encoded by the HSV-1 latency-associated transcript. *Nature*. 2006;442:82-85.
110. Hagblom P, Segal E, Billyard E, et al. Intragenic recombination leads to pilus antigenic variation in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. *Nature*. 1985;315:156-158.
111. Hall A. Rho GTPases and the actin cytoskeleton. *Science*. 1998;279:509-514.
112. Hanski E, Caparon M. Protein F, a fibronectin-binding protein, is an adhesin of the group A streptococcus *Streptococcus pyogenes*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1992;89:6172-6176.
113. Hardt WD, Chen LM, Schuebel KE, et al. *S. typhimurium* encodes an activator of Rho GTPases that induces membrane ruffling and nuclear responses in host cells. *Cell*. 1998;93:815-826.
114. Harris HJ, Davis C, Mullins JG, et al. Claudin association with CD81 defines hepatitis C virus entry. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:21092-21102.
115. Haussler S, Ziegler I, Lottel A, et al. Highly adherent small-colony variants of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in cystic fibrosis lung infection. *J Med Microbiol*. 2003;52:295-301.
116. Haussler S. Multicellular signalling and growth of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Int J Med Microbiol*. 2010;300:544-548.
117. Heiss LN, Flak TA, Lancaster JR Jr, et al. Nitric oxide mediates *Bordetella pertussis* tracheal cytotoxin damage to the respiratory epithelium. *Infect Agents Dis*. 1993;2:173-177.

118. Heiss LN, Lancaster JR Jr, Corbett JA, et al. Epithelial autotoxicity of nitric oxide: role in the respiratory cytopathology of pertussis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1994;91:267-270.
119. Heiss LN, Moser SA, Unanue ER, et al. Interleukin-1 is linked to the respiratory epithelial cytopathology of pertussis. *Infect Immun*. 1993;61:3123-3128.
120. Henderson IR, Nataro JP. Virulence functions of autotransporter proteins. *Infect Immun*. 2001;69:1231-1243.
121. Hendrixson DR, St Geme JW III. The *Haemophilus influenzae* Hap serine protease promotes adherence and microcolony formation, potentiated by a soluble host protein. *Mol Cell*. 1998;2:841-850.
122. Hensel M, Shea JE, Raupach B, et al. Functional analysis of *ssaJ* and the *ssaK/U* operon, 13 genes encoding components of the type III secretion apparatus of *Salmonella* pathogenicity island 2. *Mol Microbiol*. 1997;24:155-167.
123. Hersh D, Monack DM, Smith MR, et al. The *Salmonella* invasin SipB induces macrophage apoptosis by binding to caspase-1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1999;96:2396-2401.
124. Hewlett EL. Pertussis: current concepts of pathogenesis and prevention. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 1997;16:S78-S84.
125. Hewlett EL. A commentary on the pathogenesis of pertussis. *Clin Infect Dis*. 1999;28:S94-S98.
126. Hilbi H, Moss JE, Hersh D, et al. *Shigella*-induced apoptosis is dependent on caspase-1 which binds to IpaB. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:32895-32900.
127. Hobbs M, Collie ES, Free PD, et al. PilS and PilR, a two-component transcriptional regulatory system controlling expression of type 4 fimbriae in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1993;7:669-682.
128. Hodak H, Clantin B, Willery E, et al. Secretion signal of the filamentous haemagglutinin, a model two-partner secretion substrate. *Mol Microbiol*. 2006;61:368-382.
129. Hoe NP, Kordari P, Cole R, et al. Human immune response to streptococcal inhibitor of complement, a serotype M1 group A *Streptococcus* extracellular protein involved in epidemics. *J Infect Dis*. 2000;182:1425-1436.
130. Hoe NP, Nakashima K, Lukomski S, et al. Rapid selection of complement-inhibiting protein variants in group A *Streptococcus* epidemic waves. *Nat Med*. 1999;5:924-929.
131. Honda T, Saitoh H, Masuko M, et al. The coxsackievirus-adenovirus receptor protein as a cell adhesion molecule in the developing mouse brain. *Brain Res Mol Brain Res*. 2000;77:19-28.
132. Hood DW, Deadman ME, Allen T, et al. Use of the complete genome sequence information of *Haemophilus influenzae* strain Rd to investigate lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis. *Mol Microbiol*. 1996;22:951-965.
133. Hornby JM, Jensen EC, Lisec AD, et al. Quorum sensing in the dimorphic fungus *Candida albicans* is mediated by farnesol. *Appl Environ Microbiol*. 2001;67:2982-2992.
134. Hostetter MK. Adhesins and ligands involved in the interaction of *Candida* spp. with epithelial and endothelial surfaces. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 1994;7:29-42.
135. Hostetter MK. Linkage of adhesion, morphogenesis, and virulence in *Candida albicans*. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1998;132:258-263.
136. Howell-Adams B, Seifert HS. Molecular models accounting for the gene conversion reactions mediating gonococcal pilin antigenic variation. *Mol Microbiol*. 2000;37:1146-1158.
137. Huang Y, Paxton WA, Wolinsky SM, et al. The role of a mutant CCR5 allele in HIV-1 transmission and disease progression. *Nat Med*. 1996;2:1240-1243.
138. Hung DL, Knight SD, Woods RM, et al. Molecular basis of two subfamilies of immunoglobulin-like chaperones. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:3792-3805.
139. Hunstad DA, Justice SS. Intracellular lifestyles and immune evasion strategies of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli*. *Annu Rev Microbiol*. 2010;64:203-221.
140. Hunter CA, Sibley LD. Modulation of innate immunity by *Toxoplasma gondii* virulence effectors. *Nat Rev Microbiol*. 2012;10:766-778.
141. Hynes WL, Dixon AR, Walton SL, et al. The extracellular hyaluronidase gene (*hylA*) of *Streptococcus pyogenes*. *FEMS Microbiol Lett*. 2000;184:109-112.
142. Ibarra JA, Steele-Mortimer O. *Salmonella*—the ultimate insider. *Salmonella* virulence factors that modulate intracellular survival. *Cell Microbiol*. 2009;11:1579-1586.
143. Inoshima I, Inoshima N, Wilke GA, et al. A *Staphylococcus aureus* pore-forming toxin subverts the activity of ADAM10 to cause lethal infection in mice. *Nat Med*. 2011;17:1310-1314.
144. Isberg RR. Uptake of enteropathogenic *Yersinia* by mammalian cells. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1996;209:1-24.
145. Isberg RR, Leong JM. Multiple β1 chain integrins are receptors for invasin, a protein that promotes bacterial penetration into mammalian cells. *Cell*. 1990;60:861-871.
146. Ishibashi Y, Claus S, Relman DA. *Bordetella pertussis* filamentous hemagglutinin interacts with a leukocyte signal transduction complex and stimulates bacterial adherence to monocyte CR3 (CD11b/CD18). *J Exp Med*. 1994;180:1225-1233.
147. Ito M, Kodama M, Masuko M, et al. Expression of coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor in hearts of rats with experimental autoimmune myocarditis. *Circ Res*. 2000;86:275-280.
148. Iwai H, Kim M, Yoshikawa Y, et al. A bacterial effector targets Mad2L2, an APC inhibitor, to modulate host cell cycling. *Cell*. 2007;130:611-623.
149. Izore T, Job V, Dessen A. Biogenesis, regulation, and targeting of the type III secretion system. *Structure*. 2011;19:603-612.
150. Jacob-Dubuisson F, Heuser J, Dodson K, et al. Initiation of assembly and association of the structural elements of a bacterial pilus depend on two specialized tip proteins. *EMBO J*. 1993;12:837-847.
151. Jain S, van Ulsen P, Benz I, et al. Polar localization of the autotransporter family of large bacterial virulence proteins. *J Bacteriol*. 2006;188:4841-4850.
152. Jinno A, Shimizu N, Soda Y, et al. Identification of the chemokine receptor TER1/CCR8 expressed in brain-derived cells and T cells as a new coreceptor for HIV-1 infection. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1998;243:497-502.
153. Jones CH, Pinkner JS, Roth R, et al. FimH adhesin of type 1 pili is assembled into a fibrillar tip structure in the Enterobacteriaceae. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1995;92:2081-2085.
154. Jonsson AB, Nyberg G, Normark S. Phase variation of gonococcal pili by frameshift mutation in *pilC*, a novel gene for pilus assembly. *EMBO J*. 1991;10:477-488.
155. Julio SM, Inatsuka CS, Mazar J, et al. Natural-host animal models indicate functional interchangeability between the filamentous haemagglutinins of *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella bronchiseptica* and reveal a role for the mature C-terminal domain, but not the RGD motif, during infection. *Mol Microbiol*. 2009;71:1574-1590.
156. Justice SS, Hung C, Theriot JA, et al. Differentiation and developmental pathways of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* in urinary tract pathogenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2004;101:1333-1338.
157. Kajava AV, Cheng N, Cleaver R, et al. Beta-helix model for the filamentous haemagglutinin adhesin of *Bordetella pertussis* and related bacterial secretory proteins. *Mol Microbiol*. 2001;42:279-292.
158. Kallewaard NL, Zhang L, Chen JW, et al. Tissue-specific deletion of the coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor protects mice from virus-induced pancreatitis and myocarditis. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;6:91-98.
159. Kapadia SB, Barth H, Baumert T, et al. Initiation of hepatitis C virus infection is dependent on cholesterol and cooperativity between CD81 and scavenger receptor B type I. *J Virol*. 2007;81:374-383.
160. Kau AL, Hunstad DA, Hultgren SJ. Interaction of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* with host uroepithelium. *Curr Opin Microbiol*. 2005;8:54-59.
161. Kaufman MR, Seyer JM, Taylor RK. Processing of TCP pilin by TcpJ typifies a common step intrinsic to a newly recognized pathway of extracellular protein secretion by gram-negative bacteria. *Genes Dev*. 1991;5:1834-1846.
162. Keane FM, Clarke AW, Foster TJ, et al. The N-terminal A domain of *Staphylococcus aureus* fibronectin-binding protein A binds to tropoelastin. *Biochemistry*. 2007;46:7226-7232.
163. Keane J, Balcewicz-Sablinska MK, Remold HG, et al. Infection by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* promotes human alveolar macrophage apoptosis. *Infect Immun*. 1997;65:298-304.
164. Kenny B, DeVinney R, Stein M, et al. Enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC) transfers its receptor for intimate adherence into mammalian cells. *Cell*. 1997;91:511-520.
165. Kerr JR, Matthews RC. *Bordetella pertussis* infection: pathogenesis, diagnosis, management, and the role of protective immunity. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis*. 2000;19:77-88.
166. Khelef N, Guiso N. Induction of macrophage apoptosis by *Bordetella pertussis* adenylate cyclase-hemolysin. *FEMS Microbiol Lett*. 1995;134:27-32.
167. Khelef N, Zychlinsky A, Guiso N. *Bordetella pertussis* induces apoptosis in macrophages: role of adenylate cyclase-hemolysin. *Infect Immun*. 1993;61:4064-4071.
168. Kielian M, Rey FA. Virus membrane-fusion proteins: more than one way to make a hairpin. *Nat Rev Microbiol*. 2006;4:67-76.
169. Kimura LH, Pearsall NN. Relationship between germination of *Candida albicans* and increased adherence to human buccal epithelial cells. *Infect Immun*. 1980;28:464-468.
170. Klutts JS, Doering TL. Cryptococcal xylosyltransferase 1 (Cxt1p) from *Cryptococcus neoformans* plays a direct role in the synthesis of capsule polysaccharides. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:14327-14334.
171. Kraemer SM, Smith JD. A family affair: var genes, PfEMP1 binding, and malaria disease. *Curr Opin Microbiol*. 2006;9:374-380.
172. Krieger SE, Zeisel MB, Davis C, et al. Inhibition of hepatitis C virus infection by anti-claudin-1 antibodies is mediated by neutralization of E2-CD81-claudin-1 associations. *Hepatology*. 2010;51:1144-1157.
173. Kuehn MJ, Heuser J, Normark S, et al. P pili in uropathogenic *E. coli* are composite fibres with distinct fibrillar adhesive tips. *Nature*. 1992;356:252-255.
174. Kuehn MJ, Normark S, Hultgren SJ. Immunoglobulin-like PapD chaperone caps and uncaps interactive surfaces of nascently translocated pilus subunits. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1991;88:10586-10590.
175. Laarmann S, Cutter D, Juehne T, et al. The *Haemophilus influenzae* Hia autotransporter harbours two adhesive pockets that reside in the passenger domain and recognize the same host cell receptor. *Mol Microbiol*. 2002;46:731-743.
176. Lauer P, Albertson NH, Koomey M. Conservation of genes encoding components of a type IV pilus assembly/two-step protein export pathway in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1993;8:357-368.

177. Lavstsen T, Turner L, Saguti F, et al. *Plasmodium falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein 1 domain cassettes 8 and 13 are associated with severe malaria in children. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2012;109:E1791-E1800.
178. Lederman MM, Penn-Nicholson A, Cho M, et al. Biology of CCR5 and its role in HIV infection and treatment. *JAMA*. 2006;296:815-826.
179. Lee J, Remold HG, Ieong MH, et al. Macrophage apoptosis in response to high intracellular burden of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is mediated by a novel caspase-independent pathway. *J Immunol*. 2006;176:4267-4274.
180. Li RK, Cutler JE. Chemical definition of an epitope/adhesin molecule on *Candida albicans*. *J Biol Chem*. 1993;268:18293-18299.
181. Li K, Foy E, Ferreon JC, et al. Immune evasion by hepatitis C virus NS3/4A protease-mediated cleavage of the Toll-like receptor 3 adaptor protein TRIF. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2005;102:2992-2997.
182. Lin JS, Szaba FM, Kummer LW, et al. *Yersinia pestis* YopE contains a dominant CD8 T cell epitope that confers protection in a mouse model of pneumonic plague. *J Immunol*. 2011;187:897-904.
183. Liu DF, Mason KW, Mastri M, et al. The C-terminal fragment of the internal 110-kilodalton passenger domain of the Hap protein of nontypeable *Haemophilus influenzae* is a potential vaccine candidate. *Infect Immun*. 2004;72:6961-6968.
184. Liu R, Paxton WA, Choe S, et al. Homozygous defect in HIV-1 coreceptor accounts for resistance of some multiply-exposed individuals to HIV-1 infection. *Cell*. 1996;86:367-377.
185. Lukomski S, Hoe NP, Abdi I, et al. Nonpolar inactivation of the hypervariable streptococcal inhibitor of complement gene (*sic*) in serotype M1 *Streptococcus pyogenes* significantly decreases mouse mucosal colonization. *Infect Immun*. 2000;68:535-542.
186. Ly KT, Casanova JE. Mechanisms of *Salmonella* entry into host cells. *Cell Microbiol*. 2007;9:2103-2111.
187. Lysenko E, Richards JC, Cox AD, et al. The position of phosphorylcholine on the lipopolysaccharide of *Haemophilus influenzae* affects binding and sensitivity to C-reactive protein-mediated killing. *Mol Microbiol*. 2000;35:234-245.
188. Makhov AM, Hannah JH, Brennan MJ, et al. Filamentous hemagglutinin of *Bordetella pertussis:* a bacterial adhesin formed as a 50-nm monomeric rigid rod based on a 19-residue repeat motif rich in beta strands and turns. *J Mol Biol*. 1994;241:110-124.
189. Mapingire OS, Henderson NS, Duret G, et al. Modulating effects of the plug, helix, and N- and C-terminal domains on channel properties of the PapC usher. *J Biol Chem*. 2009;284:36324-36333.
190. Marceau M, Nassif X. Role of glycosylation at Ser63 in production of soluble pilin in pathogenic *Neisseria*. *J Bacteriol*. 1999;181:656-661.
191. Marcus SL, Brumell JH, Pfeifer CG, et al. *Salmonella* pathogenicity islands: big virulence in small packages. *Microbes Infect*. 2000;2:145-156.
192. Marquis H, Doshi V, Portnoy DA. The broad-range phospholipase C and a metalloprotease ediate listeriolysin O–independent escape of *Listeria monocytogenes* from a primary vacuole in human epithelial cells. *Infect Immun*. 1995;63:4531-4534.
193. Marrs CF, Schoolnik G, Koomey JM, et al. Cloning and sequencing of a *Moraxella bovis* pilin gene. *J Bacteriol*. 1985;163:132-139.
194. Martinez JJ, Mulvey MA, Schilling JD, et al. Type 1 pilus-mediated bacterial invasion of bladder epithelial cells. *EMBO J*. 2000;19:2803-2812.
195. Mawhinney TP, Adelstein E, Morris DA, et al. Structure determination of five sulfated oligosaccharides derived from tracheobronchial mucus glycoproteins. *J Biol Chem*. 1987;262:2994-3001.
196. McDaniel TK, Jarvis KG, Donnenberg MS, et al. A genetic locus of enterocyte effacement conserved among diverse enterobacterial pathogens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1995;92:1664-1668.
197. McDevitt D, Francois P, Vaudaux P, et al. Molecular characterization of the clumping factor (fibrinogen receptor) of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1994;11:237-248.
198. McKinney JD, Höner zu Bentrup K, Munoz-Elias EJ, et al. Persistence of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in macrophages and mice requires the glyoxylate shunt enzyme isocitrate lyase. *Nature*. 2000;406:735-738.
199. Mee CJ, Farquhar MJ, Harris HJ, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection reduces hepatocellular polarity in a vascular endothelial growth factor-dependent manner. *Gastroenterology*. 2010;138:1134-1142.
200. Mee CJ, Harris HJ, Farquhar MJ, et al. Polarization restricts hepatitis C virus entry into HepG2 hepatoma cells. *J Virol*. 2009;83:6211-6221.
201. Mejia LM, Stockbauer KE, Pan X, et al. Characterization of group A *Streptococcus* strains recovered from Mexican children with pharyngitis by automated DNA sequencing of virulence-related genes: unexpectedly large variation in the gene (*sic*) encoding a complement-inhibiting protein. *J Clin Microbiol*. 1997;35:3220-3224.
202. Meng G, Spahich N, Kenjale R, et al. Crystal structure of the *Haemophilus influenzae* Hap adhesin reveals an intercellular oligomerization mechanism for bacterial aggregation. *EMBO J*. 2011;30:3864-3874.
203. Meng G, St Geme JW III, Waksman G. Repetitive architecture of the *Haemophilus influenzae* Hia trimeric autotransporter. *J Mol Biol*. 2008;384:824-836.
204. Meng G, Surana NK, St Geme JW III, et al. Structure of the outer membrane translocator domain of the *Haemophilus influenzae* Hia trimeric autotransporter. *EMBO J*. 2006;25:2297-2304.
205. Mengaud J, Ohayon H, Gounon P, et al. E-cadherin is the receptor for internalin, a surface protein required for entry of *L. monocytogenes* into epithelial cells. *Cell*. 1996;84:923-932.
206. Menozzi FD, Mutombo R, Renauld G, et al. Heparin-inhibitable lectin activity of the filamentous hemagglutinin adhesin of *Bordetella pertussis*. *Infect Immun*. 1994;62:769-778.
207. Menzel EJ, Farr C. Hyaluronidase and its substrate hyaluronan: biochemistry, biological activities and therapeutic uses. *Cancer Lett*. 1998;131:3-11.
208. Meyer TF, Billyard E, Haas R, et al. Pilus genes of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*: chromosomal organization and DNA sequence. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1984;81:6110-6114.
209. Milner DA Jr, Whitten RO, Kamiza S, et al. The systemic pathology of cerebral malaria in African children. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol*. 2014;4:104.
210. Mounier J, Ryter A, Coquis-Rondon M, et al. Intracellular and cell-to-cell spread of *Listeria monocytogenes* involves interaction with F-actin in the enterocyte-like cell line Caco-2. *Infect Immun*. 1990;58:1048-1058.
211. Moxon ER, Kroll JS. The role of bacterial polysaccharide capsules as virulence factors. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. 1990;150:65-85.
212. Mukherjee S, Keitany G, Li Y, et al. *Yersinia* YopJ acetylates and inhibits kinase activation by blocking phosphorylation. *Science*. 2006;312:1211-1214.
213. Mulvey MA, Schilling JD, Hultgren SJ. Establishment of a persistent *Escherichia coli* reservoir during the acute phase of a bladder infection. *Infect Immun*. 2001;69:4572-4579.
214. Mysorekar IU, Hultgren SJ. Mechanisms of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* persistence and eradication from the urinary tract. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2006;103:14170-14175.
215. Nallapareddy SR, Singh KV, Sillanpaa J, et al. Endocarditis and biofilm-associated pili of *Enterococcus faecalis*. *J Clin Invest*. 2006;116:2799-2807.
216. Nelson AL, Ries J, Bagnoli F, et al. RrgA is a pilus-associated adhesin in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. *Mol Microbiol*. 2007;66:329-340.
217. Nicoll MP, Proenca JT, Efstathiou S. The molecular basis of herpes simplex virus latency. *FEMS Microbiol Rev*. 2012;36:684-705.
218. Nicosia A, Rappuoli R. Promoter of the pertussis toxin operon and production of pertussis toxin. *J Bacteriol*. 1987;169:2843-2846.
219. Nobile CJ, Mitchell AP. Genetics and genomics of *Candida albicans* biofilm formation. *Cell Microbiol*. 2006;8:1382-1391.
220. Nobile CJ, Nett JE, Andes DR, et al. Function of *Candida albicans* adhesin Hwp1 in biofilm formation. *Eukaryot Cell*. 2006;5:1604-1610.
221. Noel GJ, Brittingham A, Granato AA, et al. Effect of amplification of the *Cap* b locus on complement-mediated bacteriolysis and opsonization of type b *Haemophilus influenzae*. *Infect Immun*. 1996;64:4769-4775.
222. Noel GJ, Hoiseth SK, Edelson PJ. Type b capsule inhibits ingestion of *Haemophilus influenzae* by murine macrophages: studies with isogenic encapsulated and unencapsulated strains. *J Infect Dis*. 1992;166:178-182.
223. Noel GJ, Mosser DM, Edelson PJ. Role of complement in mouse macrophage binding of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. *J Clin Invest*. 1990;85:208-218.
224. Norris FA, Wilson MP, Wallis TS, et al. SopB, a protein required for virulence of *Salmonella dublin,* is an inositol phosphate phosphatase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1998;95:14057-14059.
225. Novembre J, Galvani AP, Slatkin M. The geographic spread of the CCR5 Delta32 HIV-resistance allele. *PLoS Biol*. 2005;3:e339.
226. Nunn DN, Lory S. Product of the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* gene *pilD* is a prepilin leader peptidase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1991;88:3281-3285.
227. O'Toole GA, Kolter R. Flagellar and twitching motility are necessary for *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* biofilm development. *Mol Microbiol*. 1998;30:295-304.
228. Ochman H, Soncini FC, Solomon F, et al. Identification of a pathogenicity island required for *Salmonella* survival in host cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1996;93:7800-7804.
229. Okada N, Liszewski MK, Atkinson JP, et al. Membrane cofactor protein (CD46) is a keratinocyte receptor for the M protein of the group A streptococcus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1995;92:2489-2493.
230. Okada N, Pentland AP, Falk P, et al. M protein and protein F act as important determinants of cell-specific tropism of *Streptococcus pyogenes* in skin tissue. *J Clin Invest*. 1994;94:965-977.
231. Oligino L, Fives-Taylor P. Overexpression and purification of a fimbria-associated adhesin of *Streptococcus parasanguis*. *Infect Immun*. 1993;61:1016-1022.
232. Oomen CJ, van Ulsen P, van Gelder P, et al. Structure of the translocator domain of a bacterial autotransporter. *EMBO J*. 2004;23:1257-1266.
233. Ozeri V, Tovi A, Burstein I, et al. A two-domain mechanism for group A streptococcal adherence through protein F to the extracellular matrix. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:989-998.
234. Palmer KL, Munson RS Jr. Cloning and characterization of the genes encoding the hemolysin of *Haemophilus ducreyi*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1995;18:821-830.
235. Parge HE, Forest KT, Hickey MJ, et al. Structure of the fibre-forming protein pilin at 2.6 Å resolution. *Nature*. 1995;378:32-38.

236. Parsek MR, Greenberg EP. Acyl-homoserine lactone quorum sensing in gram-negative bacteria: a signaling mechanism involved in associations with higher organisms. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2000;97:8789-8793.
237. Patti JM, Bremell T, Krajewska-Pietrasik D, et al. The *Staphylococcus aureus* collagen adhesin is a virulence determinant in experimental septic arthritis. *Infect Immun*. 1994;62:152-161.
238. Patti JM, Höök M. Microbial adhesins recognizing extracellular matrix macromolecules. *Curr Opin Cell Biol*. 1994;6:752-758.
239. Patti JM, Jonsson H, Guss B, et al. Molecular characterization and expression of a gene encoding a *Staphylococcus aureus* collagen adhesin. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:4766-4772.
240. Paul AS, Egan ES, Duraisingh MT. Host-parasite interactions that guide red blood cell invasion by malaria parasites. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2015;22:220-226.
241. Pays E, Nolan DP. Expression and function of surface proteins in *Trypanosoma brucei*. *Mol Biochem Parasitol*. 1998;91:3-36.
242. Pearson JP, Feldman M, Iglewski BH, et al. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* cell-to-cell signaling is required for virulence in a model of acute pulmonary infection. *Infect Immun*. 2000;68:4331-4334.
243. Pearson RD, Symes P, Conboy M, et al. Inhibition of monocyte oxidative responses by *Bordetella pertussis* adenylate cyclase toxin. *J Immunol*. 1987;139: 2749-2754.
244. Peters PJ, Bhattacharya J, Hibbitts S, et al. Biological analysis of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 R5 envelopes amplified from brain and lymph node tissues of AIDS patients with neuropathology reveals two distinct tropism phenotypes and identifies envelopes in the brain that confer an enhanced tropism and fusigenicity for macrophages. *J Virol*. 2004;78:6915-6926.
245. Peters PJ, Sullivan WM, Duenas-Decamp MJ, et al. Non–macrophage-tropic human immunodeficiency virus type 1 R5 envelopes predominate in blood, lymph nodes, and semen: implications for transmission and pathogenesis. *J Virol*. 2006;80:6324-6332.
246. Pietschmann T. Virology: final entry key for hepatitis C. *Nature*. 2009;457: 797-798.
247. Piroth L, Que YA, Widmer E, et al. The fibrinogen- and fibronectin-binding domains of *Staphylococcus aureus* fibronectin-binding protein A synergistically promote endothelial invasion and experimental endocarditis. *Infect Immun*. 2008;76:3824-3831.
248. Ploss A, Evans MJ, Gaysinskaya VA, et al. Human occludin is a hepatitis C virus entry factor required for infection of mouse cells. *Nature*. 2009;457:882-886.
249. Poole K, Schiebel E, Braun V. Molecular characterization of the hemolysin determinant of *Serratia marcescens*. *J Bacteriol*. 1988;170:3177-3188.
250. Potts WJ, Saunders JR. Nucleotide sequence of the structural gene for class I pilin from *Neisseria meningitidis:* homologies with the pilE locus of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1988;2:647-653.
251. Prasad SM, Yin Y, Rodzinski E, et al. Identification of a carbohydrate recognition domain in filamentous hemagglutinin from *Bordetella pertussis*. *Infect Immun*. 1993;61:2780-2785.
252. Preston CM. Repression of viral transcription during herpes simplex virus latency. *J Gen Virol*. 2000;81:1-19.
253. Qi Y, Zhang F, Zhang L, et al. Hepatitis E virus produced from cell culture has a lipid envelope. *PLoS ONE*. 2015;10:e0132503.
254. Race PR, Lakey JH, Banfield MJ. Insertion of the enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* Tir virulence protein into membranes in vitro. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281: 7842-7849.
255. Ram S, Mackinnon FG, Gulati S, et al. The contrasting mechanisms of serum resistance of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and group B *Neisseria meningitidis*. *Mol Immunol*. 1999;36:915-928.
256. Rao VK, Progulske-Fox A. Cloning and sequencing of two type 4 (N-methylphenylalanine) pilin genes from *Eikenella corrodens*. *J Gen Microbiol*. 1993;139: 651-660.
257. Reilly MC, Levery SB, Castle SA, et al. A novel xylosylphosphotransferase activity discovered in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. *J Biol Chem*. 2009;284:36118-36127.
258. Relman D, Tuomanen E, Falkow S, et al. Recognition of a bacterial adhesion by an integrin: macrophage CR3 (alpha M beta 2, CD11b/CD18) binds filamentous hemagglutinin of *Bordetella pertussis*. *Cell*. 1990;61:1375-1382.
259. Remaut H, Tang C, Henderson NS, et al. Fiber formation across the bacterial outer membrane by the chaperone/usher pathway. *Cell*. 2008;133:640-652.
260. Rest RF, Frangipane JV. Growth of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in CMP-N-acetylneuraminic acid inhibits nonopsonic (opacity-associated outer membrane protein-mediated) interactions with human neutrophils. *Infect Immun*. 1992;60: 989-997.
261. Robbins JR, Barth AI, Marquis H, et al. *Listeria monocytogenes* exploits normal host cell processes to spread from cell to cell. *J Cell Biol*. 1999;146:1333-1350.
262. Roche FM, Downer R, Keane F, et al. The N-terminal A domain of fibronectin-binding proteins A and B promotes adhesion of *Staphylococcus aureus* to elastin. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:38433-38440.
263. Rosenshine I, Ruschkowski S, Stein M, et al. A pathogenic bacterium triggers epithelial signals to form a functional bacterial receptor that mediates actin pseudopod formation. *EMBO J*. 1996;15:2613-2624.
264. Rosini R, Rinaudo CD, Soriani M, et al. Identification of novel genomic islands coding for antigenic pilus-like structures in *Streptococcus agalactiae*. *Mol Microbiol*. 2006;61:126-141.
265. Ross NT, Miller BL. Characterization of the binding surface of the translocated intimin receptor, an essential protein for EPEC and EHEC cell adhesion. *Protein Sci*. 2007;16:2677-2683.
266. Ruchaud-Sparagano MH, Muhlen S, Dean P, et al. The enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC) Tir effector inhibits NF-κB activity by targeting TNFα receptor-associated factors. *PLoS Pathog*. 2011;7:e1002414.
267. Rudel T, Scheurerpflug I, Meyer TF. *Neisseria* PilC protein identified as type 4 pilus tip-located adhesin. *Nature*. 1995;373:357-359.
268. Russell DG. What does "inhibition of phagosome-lysosome fusion" really mean? *Trends Microbiol*. 1998;6:212-214.
269. Sandvig K, van Deurs B. Entry of ricin and Shiga toxin into cells: molecular mechanisms and medical perspectives. *EMBO J*. 2000;19:5943-5950.
270. Sauer FG, Knight SD, Waksman GJ, et al. PapD-like chaperones and pilus biogenesis. *Semin Cell Dev Biol*. 2000;11:27-34.
271. Sharma V, Sharma S, Höner zu Bentrup K, et al. Structure of isocitrate lyase, a persistence factor of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Nat Struct Biol*. 2000;7: 663-668.
272. Shaw CE, Taylor RK. *Vibrio cholerae* O395 *tcpA* pilin gene sequence and comparison of predicted protein structural features to those of type 4 pilins. *Infect Immun*. 1990;58:3042-3049.
273. Shea JE, Hensel M, Gleeson C, et al. Identification of a virulence locus encoding a second type III secretion system in *Salmonella typhimurium*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1996;93:2593-2597.
274. Shere KD, Sallustio S, Manessis A, et al. Disruption of IcsP, the major *Shigella* protease that cleaves IcsA, accelerates actin-based motility. *Mol Microbiol*. 1997;25:451-462.
275. Silva S, Negri M, Henriques M, et al. Adherence and biofilm formation of non-*Candida albicans Candida* species. *Trends Microbiol*. 2011;19:241-247.
276. Simmons G, Wilkinson D, Reeves JD, et al. Primary, syncytium-inducing human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolates are dual-tropic and most can use either Lestr or CCR5 as coreceptors for virus entry. *J Virol*. 1996;70:8355-8360.
277. Singh KV, Nallapareddy SR, Murray BE. Importance of the *ebp* (endocarditis- and biofilm-associated pilus) locus in the pathogenesis of *Enterococcus faecalis* ascending urinary tract infection. *J Infect Dis*. 2007;195:1671-1677.
278. Smedley JG III, Jewell E, Roguskie J, et al. Influence of pilin glycosylation on *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 1244 pilus function. *Infect Immun*. 2005;73:7922-7931.
279. Smith RS, Harris SG, Phipps R, et al. The *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* quorum-sensing molecule N-(3-oxododecanoyl)homoserine lactone contributes to virulence and induces inflammation in vivo. *J Bacteriol*. 2002;184:1132-1139.
280. Smith K, Humphreys D, Hume PJ, et al. Enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* recruits the cellular inositol phosphatase SHIP2 to regulate actin-pedestal formation. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2010;7:13-24.
281. Smith GA, Marquis H, Jones S, et al. The two distinct phospholipases C of *Listeria monocytogenes* have overlapping roles in escape from a vacuole and cell-to-cell spread. *Infect Immun*. 1995;63:4231-4237.
282. Smith CV, Sharma V, Sacchettini JC. TB drug discovery: addressing issues of persistence and resistance. *Tuberculosis (Edinb)*. 2004;84:45-55.
283. Smith GA, Portnoy DA. How the *Listeria monocytogenes* ActA protein converts actin polymerization into a motile force. *Trends Microbiol*. 1997;5:272-276.
284. Speziale P, Pietrocola G, Rindi S, et al. Structural and functional role of *Staphylococcus aureus* surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules of the host. *Future Microbiol*. 2009;4:1337-1352.
285. St Geme JW III. Bacterial adhesins: determinants of microbial colonization and pathogenicity. *Adv Pediatr*. 1997;44:43-72.
286. St Geme JW III, de la Morena ML, Falkow S. A *Haemophilus influenzae* IgA protease-like protein promotes intimate interaction with human epithelial cells. *Mol Microbiol*. 1994;14:217-233.
287. St Geme JW III, Yeo HJ. A prototype two-partner secretion pathway: the *Haemophilus influenzae* HMW1 and HMW2 adhesin systems. *Trends Microbiol*. 2009;17:355-360.
288. Staab JF, Bahn YS, Tai CH, et al. Expression of transglutaminase substrate activity on *Candida albicans* germ tubes through a coiled, disulfide-bonded N-terminal domain of Hwp1 requires C-terminal glycosylphosphatidylinositol modification. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:40737-40747.
289. Staab JF, Bradway SD, Fidel PL, et al. Adhesive and mammalian transglutaminase substrate properties of *Candida albicans* Hwp1. *Science*. 1999;283:1535-1538.
290. Staab JF, Ferrer CA, Sundstrom P. Developmental expression of a tandemly repeated, proline- and glutamine-rich amino acid motif on hyphal surfaces on *Candida albicans*. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:6298-6305.
291. Starkey M, Hickman JH, Ma L, et al. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* rugose small-colony variants have adaptations that likely promote persistence in the cystic fibrosis lung. *J Bacteriol*. 2009;191:3492-3503.
292. Steinhauer J, Agha R, Pham T, et al. The unipolar *Shigella* surface protein IcsA is targeted directly to the bacterial old pole: IcsP cleavage of IcsA occurs over the entire bacterial surface. *Mol Microbiol*. 1999;32:367-377.

293. Stephenson AE, Wu H, Novak J, et al. The Fap1 fimbrial adhesin is a glycoprotein: antibodies specific for the glycan moiety block the adhesion of *Streptococcus parasanguis* in an in vitro tooth model. *Mol Microbiol*. 2002;43:147-157.
294. Stone KD, Zhang HZ, Carlson LK, et al. A cluster of fourteen genes from enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* is sufficient for the biogenesis of a type IV pilus. *Mol Microbiol*. 1996;20:325-337.
295. Straley SC, Skrzypek E, Plano GV, et al. Yops of *Yersinia* spp. pathogenic for humans. *Infect Immun*. 1993;61:3105-3110.
296. Strom MS, Lory S. Cloning and expression of the pilin gene of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PAK in *Escherichia coli*. *J Bacteriol*. 1986;165:367-372.
297. Stromberg N, Marklund BI, Lund B, et al. Host-specificity of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* depends on differences in binding specificity to Gal alpha 1-4Gal-containing isoreceptors. *EMBO J*. 1990;9:2001-2010.
298. Sturgill-Koszycki S, Schlesinger PH, Chakraborty P, et al. Lack of acidification in *Mycobacterium* phagosomes produced by exclusion of the vesicular proton-ATPase. *Science*. 1994;263:678-681.
299. Surana NK, Cotter SE, Yeo HJ, et al. Structural determinants of *Haemophilus influenzae* adherence to host epithelium: variations on type V secretion. In: Waksman G, Caparon MG, Hultgren SJ, eds. *Structural Basis of Bacterial Pathogenesis*. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 2005: 129-148.
300. Switalski LM, Patti JM, Butcher W, et al. A collagen receptor on *Staphylococcus aureus* strains isolated from patients with septic arthritis mediates adhesion to cartilage. *Mol Microbiol*. 1993;7:99-107.
301. Taylor S, Barragan A, Su C, et al. A secreted serine-threonine kinase determines virulence in the eukaryotic pathogen *Toxoplasma gondii*. *Science*. 2006;314: 1776-1780.
302. Teinert PM, Candi E, Kartasova T, et al. Small proline-rich proteins are cross-bridging proteins in the cornified cell envelopes of stratified squamous epithelia. *J Struct Biol*. 1998;122:76-85.
303. Tham WH, Healer J, Cowman AF. Erythrocyte and reticulocyte binding-like proteins of *Plasmodium falciparum*. *Trends Parasitol*. 2012;28:23-30.
304. Theriot JA. The cell biology of infection by intracellular bacterial pathogens. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 1995;11:213-239.
305. Theriot JA, Mitchison TJ, Tilney LG, et al. The rate of actin-based motility of intracellular *Listeria monocytogenes* equals the rate of actin polymerization. *Nature*. 1992;357:257-260.
306. Theriot JA, Rosenblatt J, Portnoy DA, et al. Involvement of profilin in the actin-based motility of *L. monocytogenes* in cells and in cell-free extracts. *Cell*. 1994;76:505-517.
307. Thomas WE, Nilsson LM, Forero M, et al. Shear-dependent "stick-and-roll" adhesion of type 1 fimbriated *Escherichia coli*. *Mol Microbiol*. 2004;53: 1545-1557.
308. Thomas WE, Trintchina E, Forero M, et al. Bacterial adhesion to target cells enhanced by shear force. *Cell*. 2002;109:913-923.
309. Timpe JM, Stamataki Z, Jennings A, et al. Hepatitis C virus cell-cell transmission in hepatoma cells in the presence of neutralizing antibodies. *Hepatology*. 2008; 47:17-24.
310. Tomlinson S, Raper J. The lysis of *Trypanosoma brucei brucei* by human serum. *Nat Biotechnol*. 1996;14:717-721.
311. Touze T, Hayward RD, Eswaran J, et al. Self-association of EPEC intimin mediated by the β-barrel–containing anchor domain: a role in clustering of the Tir receptor. *Mol Microbiol*. 2004;51:73-87.
312. Tran TM, Ongoiba A, Coursen J, et al. Naturally acquired antibodies specific for *Plasmodium falciparum* reticulocyte-binding protein homologue 5 inhibit parasite growth and predict protection from malaria. *J Infect Dis*. 2014;209:789-798.
313. Tucker SC, Galan JE. Complex function for SicA, a *Salmonella enterica* serovar typhimurium type III secretion-associated chaperone. *J Bacteriol*. 2000;182: 2262-2268.
314. Turner L, Lavstsen T, Berger SS, et al. Severe malaria is associated with parasite binding to endothelial protein C receptor. *Nature*. 2013;498:502-505.
315. Umbach JL, Kramer MF, Jurak I, et al. MicroRNAs expressed by herpes simplex virus 1 during latent infection regulate viral mRNAs. *Nature*. 2008;454: 780-783.
316. Uphoff TS, Welch RA. Nucleotide sequencing of the *Proteus mirabilis* calcium-independent hemolysin genes (*hpmA* and *hpmB*) reveals sequence similarity with the *Serratia marcescens* hemolysin genes (*shlA* and *shlB*). *J Bacteriol*. 1990;172:1206-1216.
317. van't Wout AB, Kootstra NA, Mulder-Kampinga GA, et al. Macrophage-tropic variants initiate human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection after sexual, parenteral, and vertical transmission. *J Clin Invest*. 1994;94:2060-2067.
318. Vazquez-Torres A, Jones-Carson J, Baumler AJ, et al. Extraintestinal dissemination of *Salmonella* by CD18-expressing phagocytes. *Nature*. 1999;401:804-808.
319. Virji M, Stimson E, Makepeace K, et al. Posttranslational modifications of meningococcal pili: identification of a common trisaccharide substitution on variant pilins of strain C311. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1996;797:53-64.
320. Wagner EK, Bloom DC. Experimental investigation of herpes simplex virus latency. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 1997;10:419-443.
321. Wakita T, Pietschmann T, Kato T, et al. Production of infectious hepatitis C virus in tissue culture from a cloned viral genome. *Nat Med*. 2005;11:791-796.
322. Wann ER, Gurusiddappa S, Höök M. The fibronectin-binding MSCRAMM FnbpA of *Staphylococcus aureus* is a bifunctional protein that also binds to fibrinogen. *J Biol Chem*. 2000;275:13863-13871.
323. Weir S, Marrs CF. Identification of type 4 pili in *Kingella denitrificans*. *Infect Immun*. 1992;60:3437-3441.
324. Weiser JN, Maskell DJ, Butler PD, et al. Characterization of repetitive sequences controlling phase variation of *Haemophilus influenzae* lipopolysaccharide. *J Bacteriol*. 1990;172:3304-3309.
325. Weiser JN, Pan N. Adaptation of *Haemophilus influenzae* to acquired and innate humoral immunity based on phase variation of lipopolysaccharide. *Mol Microbiol*. 1998;30:767-775.
326. Weiser JN, Pan N, McGowan KL, et al. Phosphorylcholine on the lipopolysaccharide of *Haemophilus influenzae* contributes to persistence in the respiratory tract and sensitivity to serum killing mediated by C-reactive protein. *J Exp Med*. 1998;187:631-640.
327. Weiser JN, Shchepetov M, Chong ST. Decoration of lipopolysaccharide with phosphorylcholine: a phase-variable characteristic of *Haemophilus influenzae*. *Infect Immun*. 1997;65:943-950.
328. Weiss SM, Ladwein M, Schmidt D, et al. IRSp53 links the enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* effectors Tir and EspFU for actin pedestal formation. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2009;5:244-258.
329. Wetzler LM, Barry K, Blake MS, et al. Gonococcal lipooligosaccharide sialylation prevents complement-dependent killing by immune sera. *Infect Immun*. 1992;60:39-43.
330. Wexler DE, Chenoweth DE, Cleary PP. Mechanism of action of the group A streptococcal C5a inactivator. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1985;82:8144-8148.
331. Wieland SF, Chisari FV. Stealth and cunning: hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses. *J Virol*. 2005;79:9369-9380.
332. Wilke GA, Bubeck Wardenburg J. Role of a disintegrin and metalloprotease 10 in *Staphylococcus aureus* α-hemolysin-mediated cellular injury. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2010;107:13473-13478.
333. Willems RJ, Geuijen C, van der Heide HG, et al. Mutational analysis of the *Bordetella pertussis fim/fha* gene cluster: identification of a gene with sequence similarities to haemolysin accessory genes involved in export of FHA. *Mol Microbiol*. 1994;11:337-347.
334. Wilson JR, de Sessions PF, Leon MA, et al. West Nile virus nonstructural protein 1 inhibits TLR3 signal transduction. *J Virol*. 2008;82:8262-8271.
335. Wolff C, Nisan I, Hanski E, et al. Protein translocation into host epithelial cells by infecting enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1998;28: 143-155.
336. Wright SD, Silverstein SC. Receptors for C3b and C3bi promote phagocytosis but not the release of toxic oxygen from human phagocytes. *J Exp Med*. 1983;158:2016-2023.
337. Wu H, Bu S, Newell P, et al. Two gene determinants are differentially involved in the biogenesis of Fap1 precursors in *Streptococcus parasanguis*. *J Bacteriol*. 2007;189:1390-1398.
338. Wu H, Fives-Taylor PM. Identification of dipeptide repeats and a cell wall sorting signal in the fimbriae-associated adhesin, Fap1, of *Streptococcus parasanguis*. *Mol Microbiol*. 1999;34:1070-1081.
339. Wu H, Mintz KP, Ladha M, et al. Isolation and characterization of Fap1, a fimbriae-associated adhesin of *Streptococcus parasanguis* FW213. *Mol Microbiol*. 1998;28:487-500.
340. Wu H, Song Z, Givskov M, et al. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* mutations in *lasI* and *rhlI* quorum sensing systems result in milder chronic lung infection. *Microbiology*. 2001;147:1105-1113.
341. Xu H, Storch T, Yu M, et al. Characterization of the human Forssman synthetase gene: an evolving association between glycolipid synthesis and host-microbial interactions. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274:29390-29398.
342. Yanagishita M, Hascall VC. Cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:9451-9454.
343. Yeo HJ, Cotter SE, Laarmann S, et al. Structural basis for host recognition by the *Haemophilus influenzae* Hia autotransporter. *EMBO J*. 2004;23:1245-1256.
344. Yi Y, Ma Y, Gao F, et al. Crystal structure of EHEC intimin: insights into the complementarity between EPEC and EHEC. *PLoS ONE*. 2010;5:e15285.
345. Yoon S, Liu Z, Eyobo Y, et al. *Yersinia* effector YopJ inhibits yeast MAPK signaling pathways by an evolutionarily conserved mechanism. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278:2131-2135.
346. Yu L, Lee KK, Sheth HB, et al. Fimbria-mediated adherence of *Candida albicans* to glycosphingolipid receptors on human buccal epithelial cells. *Infect Immun*. 1994;62:2843-2848.
347. Yu M, Haslam DB. Shiga toxin is transported from the endoplasmic reticulum following interaction with the luminal chaperone HEDJ/ERdj3. *Infect Immun*. 2005;73:2524-2532.
348. Zabolotny JM, Krummenacher C, Fraser NW. The herpes simplex virus type 1 2.0-kilobase latency-associated transcript is a stable intron which branches at a guanosine. *J Virol*. 1997;71:4199-4208.

349. Zhang L, He T, Talal A, et al. In vivo distribution of the human immunodeficiency virus/simian immunodeficiency virus coreceptors: CXCR4, CCR3, and CCR5. *J Virol*. 1998;72:5035-5045.
350. Zhang Y, Mena P, Romanov G, et al. A protective epitope in type III effector YopE is a major CD8 T cell antigen during primary infection with *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*. *Infect Immun*. 2012;80:206-214.
351. Zhang J, Randall G, Higginbottom A, et al. CD81 is required for hepatitis C virus glycoprotein-mediated viral infection. *J Virol*. 2004;78:1448-1455.
352. Zhu T, Mo H, Wang N, et al. Genotypic and phenotypic characterization of HIV-1 patients with primary infection. *Science*. 1993;261:1179-1181.
353. Zoja A, Remuzzi G. The pivotal role of the endothelial cell in the pathogenesis of HUS. In: Kaplan BS, Trompeter RS, Moake JL, eds. *Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome and Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 1992:389-404.
354. Zwahlen A, Kroll JS, Rubin LG, et al. The molecular basis of pathogenicity in *Haemophilus influenzae*: comparative virulence of genetically-related capsular transformants and correlation with changes at the capsulation locus *cap*. *Microb Pathog*. 1989;7:225-235.
355. Zychlinsky A, Prevost MC, Sansonetti PJ. *Shigella flexneri* induces apoptosis in infected macrophages. *Nature*. 1992;358:167-169.
356. Zychlinsky A, Sansonetti PJ. Apoptosis as a proinflammatory event: what can we learn from bacteria-induced cell death? *Trends Microbiol*. 1997;5:201-204.

Normal and Impaired Immunologic Responses to Infection

2

Michael F. Tosi

This chapter provides an overview of immunologic responses to infection and considers host interactions with different classes of pathogens, normal innate and adaptive immune mechanisms, the developing host responses of neonates, specific primary and secondary immunodeficiencies, and approaches to the evaluation of children suspected of having impaired immunity. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) are not considered here because they are addressed fully in Chapter 192B. This chapter is intended to supply a basic understanding of mechanisms involved in normal host responses to infection, an appreciation of the underlying basis and clinical presentation of important immunodeficiencies, and familiarity with general principles of evaluation and management of patients with suspected or documented disorders of immunity.

HOST-PATHOGEN INTERACTIONS

General Features of Host-Pathogen Interactions

Humans are constantly exposed to a daunting number and diversity of microorganisms that can cause infection. Many organisms that usually coexist harmoniously with the human host on the skin or on mucous membranes of the oral cavity, upper airways, or lower gastrointestinal tract may invade and become pathogens only if the balance of the commensal relationship is disrupted. Other organisms are more virulent, and they overtly challenge the host's normal surface barriers and internal defense mechanisms. The human host has evolved a complex array of protective mechanisms designed to defend itself against these continuous microbial challenges.[592] To understand the pathogenesis, pathology, and natural history of infectious diseases, familiarity with the features of infectious agents that confer virulence is necessary; these topics are addressed elsewhere in this book. However, it is equally important to understand the elements of the host's response that contribute to containment, elimination, and protection against subsequent infection with these agents. Furthermore, it is important to recognize that host responses to infections also may contribute to the pathophysiology of infectious diseases and may injure the host in other ways.

The characteristic features of specific infectious diseases are determined by the interactions of structural components and released products of microbial pathogens with host tissue, cells, and their products. Virulence tactics commonly employed by organisms include adherence to host cell surfaces, internalization within or invasion of host cells, production of toxins, elaboration of surface barriers such as bacterial polysaccharide capsules, usurpation of host synthetic mechanisms, and direct inhibition of specific defense mechanisms within host cells. The successful evolution of host strategies to protect against microbial attack has resulted in defenses designed to interfere with or to counteract many of these modes of microbial virulence.[592] In recent decades, some of humanity's oldest microbial adversaries (e.g., smallpox, poliomyelitis, measles) systematically have been, or are being, eradicated with aggressive implementation of immunization programs. In the meantime, previously unrecognized human pathogens such as human immunodeficiency

virus–1 (HIV-1) and Ebola virus have emerged as new adversaries. Moreover, many of our oldest nemeses (e.g., tuberculosis, malaria) continue to elude our efforts to bring them under control, and they remain serious problems worldwide. Continued research at the interface between microbial pathogenesis and immunologic mechanisms is essential for the development of innovative approaches that can support and augment human immune responses to both old and new infectious diseases.

Main Features of Host Responses to Specific Classes of Infectious Agents

Viruses

Viruses are obligate intracellular parasites that consist of genetic material in the form of either DNA or RNA that usually is surrounded by a protein coat and may or may not be bound by a lipid envelope.[372] Diseases caused by viruses are remarkably diverse, ranging from mild and merely inconvenient to rapidly fatal, and from acute or brief to chronic or lifelong. However, certain features are common to the pathogenesis of most viral infections. First, viruses must enter host cells to replicate. Viral entry ordinarily is initiated by attachment of a viral surface protein to a specific receptor molecule on the host cell. The specific viral ligands or their corresponding host cell receptors have been identified for some viruses. For example, rhinovirus has evolved a capsid protein that binds to human intercellular adhesion molecule–1 (ICAM-1) on respiratory epithelium[245]; the envelope glycoproteins of HIV-1 interact with CD4 on T lymphocytes and distinct chemokine receptors on lymphocytes or macrophages[154,308,589]; and internalization of adenoviruses depends on interaction between a specific peptide sequence in the penton base complex of the viral capsid and α_V integrins on host cell surfaces.[584] After the virus has entered the host cell, the cellular synthetic machinery is redirected to the synthesis of viral components. As with many native proteins synthesized by the host cell, a portion of newly synthesized viral protein is processed into peptides and presented on the infected cell surface by major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules (see later discussion). The host mechanisms most important in defense against the majority of viral pathogens include the production of specific neutralizing antibodies against viral surface proteins, the development of specific $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T-cell responses that eliminate infected cells, and the production by different immune cells of type 1 interferons (IFNs) that disrupt viral replication.[38,345,347,476,536] Natural killer (NK) cells appear to mediate the destruction of some virus-infected host cells,[120,513] and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) may ensue after immunoglobulin (Ig)G antibodies bind to viral antigens on the infected cell, permitting subsequent attachment of either NK cells or cytotoxic T cells via IgG Fc receptors.[200] IFNs and other cytokines may enhance NK and ADCC activity, and cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) may exert cytotoxic actions on cells infected with certain viruses.[347] Additionally, opsonic complement components bound to viral surfaces can interfere with cell attachment, and the complement-derived membrane attack complex can lyse enveloped viruses.[60]

Bacteria

The human host is colonized with a large variety of bacteria at skin and mucous membrane surfaces.[108,404] The integrity of these mechanical barriers ordinarily prevents systemic invasion of local commensal bacteria.[89] The epithelial cells that constitute these barriers, on recognition of an organism as a pathogen, also can release defensins and other microbicidal molecules.[225] In healthy hosts, circulating polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs) help keep the resident flora in check by leaving the bloodstream at the mucosal sites containing the highest bacterial burdens, such as the lower intestine and the gingival crevices of the oral cavity.[28] This phenomenon helps account for the increased risk for local and systemic infection caused by oral and intestinal organisms in patients with severe neutropenia, including those who receive prolonged chemotherapy for malignancies, and in patients with phagocyte migration disorders such as leukocyte adhesion deficiency syndromes.[28] Important host defenses against most bacteria that invade the human host systemically include the complement system, specific antibodies that promote both the opsonic and the bacteriolytic functions of complement, and phagocytes.[1,28,60,293]

Fungi

Host mechanisms critical for defense against fungi are less well understood than those directed at bacteria and viruses, but phagocytes and cell-mediated immunity appear to be most important.[187,215] The relative importance of these factors appears to depend on the specific organisms involved, as is demonstrated by clinical observations in patients with isolated defects of one or the other. Severe mucosal infections caused by *Candida* spp. are common in patients with acquired or primary cell-mediated immune deficits, such as HIV infection, thymic aplasia (see later discussion), chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis, and some forms of severe combined immunodeficiency, as well as in patients with disorders of leukocyte migration.[28,187] In contrast to *Candida, Aspergillus* infections are not as great a problem for patients with cell-mediated immune defects as they are for patients with defects in phagocytic host defenses, such as neutropenia associated with cancer chemotherapy or stem cell transplantation, or genetic defects in phagocyte killing such as chronic granulomatous disease.[58,588] Fungi such as *Histoplasma* and *Cryptococcus,* like *Candida,* tend to cause severe infections in patients with defects in cell-mediated immunity, although phagocytes clearly are required for optimal clearance of these organisms.[170,290,582] The main role of antibodies and complement in protection from fungi probably is to provide opsonic activity to enhance phagocyte function.[172]

Parasites

Parasites such as protozoa and helminths comprise such a widely varying group of pathogenic organisms that it is difficult to generalize about mechanisms of immunity to these organisms as a group. However, the importance of specific host mechanisms in defense against certain parasites may be appreciated by considering the characteristic host responses mobilized by parasitic infection or infestations. Some helminths induce production by host cells of chemokines that recruit eosinophils and stimulate their production. This suggests a likely role for these cells in antiparasitic defenses, and eosinophils have been shown to be important in protection against helminths such as *Strongyloides* and other parasites in this group that can invade tissues. IgE, among the immunoglobulins, appears to play a special role, often in concert with eosinophils, in anthelmintic defenses. IgG also may be important based on the susceptibility of individuals with hypogammaglobulinemia to hyperinfection with *Strongyloides*. Patients with hypogammaglobulinemia also are at risk for chronic or severe infestations with the flagellate intestinal parasite *Giardia lamblia*, suggesting a role for some degree of antibody-mediated protection in normal hosts. Patients with primary or acquired disorders of cell-mediated immunity are prone to development of serious central nervous system and ocular manifestations of infection with the protozoan *Toxoplasma gondii,* an obligate intracellular parasite, as well as hyperinfection with *Strongyloides*.[299,429]

FEATURES OF NORMAL IMMUNE FUNCTION

The immune system can be viewed as consisting of two broad response categories: innate immunity and adaptive immunity. The former encompasses the more rapid and phylogenetically primitive, nonspecific responses to infection, such as surface defenses, cytokine elaboration, complement activation, and phagocytic responses. The latter involves more slowly developing, persistent, and highly evolved antigen-specific responses, such as cell-mediated immunity and antibody production that exhibit extraordinarily diverse ranges of specificities. The various arms of the immune system engage in a wide range of interactions that may enhance or regulate functions of other components of immunity, adding to the already remarkable complexity of the human immune response, and numerous examples of such interactions will be provided.

Innate Immune Responses

Epithelia, Defensins, and Other Antimicrobial Peptides

The epithelium of skin and mucosal tissue functions as a mechanical barrier to the invasion of microbial pathogens. In recent decades, it has

become clear that epithelial cells also are a major source of antimicrobial peptides that play important roles in local host defense.[48,224,223,421] Studies of their structure, sources, expression, and actions also have revealed an unexpected range of immunologic activities for these molecules whose functions once were considered mainly antimicrobial in nature.[2,33]

Epithelial cells of mucous membranes of the airways and intestines, as well as keratinocytes, express the human β-defensins (HBD)-1, HBD-2, HBD-3, and HBD-4. These small cationic peptides are similar to the α-defensins stored in the azurophilic granules of neutrophils, and they display antimicrobial activity against a broad range of bacteria, fungi, chlamydiae, and enveloped viruses.[48,223,225,421] Their production by epithelial cells may be constitutive, as for HBD-1, or inducible as for HBD-2, HBD-3, and HBD-4. For example, recent evidence indicates that epithelial cells of the airway or intestine can produce HBD-2 in response to activation by bacterial products via the Toll-like receptors TLR2 or TLR4 (see later discussion) on the epithelial cells.[263,568,574] Stimulation of epithelium by cytokines, including interleukin (IL)-1 or TNF-α also can induce defensin production.[48,225] Defensins have been reported to exert their antimicrobial action either by the creation of membrane pores or by membrane disruption resulting from electrostatic interaction with the polar head groups of membrane lipids, with more evidence now favoring the latter mechanism.[48,275] Some microorganisms have evolved mechanisms for evading the action of defensins. For example, bacterial polysaccharide capsules may limit access of microbial peptides to the cell membrane,[112] and an exoprotein of *Staphylococcus aureus,* staphylokinase, neutralizes the microbicidal action of neutrophil α-defensins.[288]

Several immunoregulatory properties of defensins and related peptides, distinct from their antimicrobial actions, have been documented.[223] Several such peptides have been shown to facilitate posttranslational processing of IL-1β.[439] Some of the β defensins have been shown to function as chemoattractants for neutrophils, memory T cells, and immature dendritic cells by binding to the chemokine receptor CCR-6.[274,403,421] Separately, HBD-2 has been shown to act, via a mechanism that requires TLR4, to activate immature dendritic cells and promote their maturation.[69,591] The β-defensins also act as chemoattractants for mast cells and can induce mast cell degranulation.[402] HBD-2 and several other antimicrobial peptides can interfere with binding between bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and LPS-binding protein (LBP), a process important in activating inflammatory cells via TLR4 (see later discussion).[493]

Additional antimicrobial peptides of epithelial cells include lysozyme and cathelicidin. Lysozyme, an antimicrobial peptide also found in neutrophil granules, attacks the peptidoglycan cell walls of bacteria and may be released from cells by mechanisms that involve TLR activation.[431] Cathelicidin, or LL37, like lysozyme, is released from both neutrophils and epithelial cells. It exhibits broad antimicrobial activity and can inhibit lentiviral replication.[274,527] Cathelicidin also exhibits chemotactic activity for neutrophils, monocytes, and T lymphocytes. This activity is mediated via a formyl peptide receptor–like molecule (FPRL-1), rather than the chemokine receptor (CCR)6 bound by β-defensins.[590]

The release of defensins in response to activation of TLRs and the various actions of these peptides, including their direct antimicrobial activities, their chemoattractant actions for a wide range of immune cells, and their activation of dendritic cell maturation, already suggest a highly complex and regulatory role in the development of host defense and immunity. Genomic evidence for the possible existence of many additional human defensins that have not yet been characterized suggests that current knowledge describes but a small sample of the overall contribution of these peptides to immune responses.[48,490]

Toll-Like Receptors

Mononuclear phagocytes, including circulating monocytes and tissue macrophages, other phagocytic cells, and many epithelial cells, express a family of receptors that is highly homologous to the *Drosophila* receptor called Toll.[95,263,370,568,574] These receptors mediate a phylogenetically primitive, nonclonal mechanism of pathogen recognition based on binding, not to specific antigens, but to structurally conserved pathogen-associated molecular patterns.[8,412,413,595] At least 10 human TLRs with a range of microbial ligands have been identified, such as gram-negative bacterial LPS, bacterial lipoproteins, lipoteichoic acids of gram-positive bacteria, bacterial cell wall peptidoglycans, cell wall components of yeast and mycobacteria, unmethylated CpG dinucleotide motifs in bacterial DNA, some viral particles, and viral RNA.[8,412,413,595] Gram-positive cell wall components bind mainly to TLR2, and TLR2 also can bind components of herpes simplex virus.[323,538] TLR2 forms dimers with either TLR1 or TLR6 when bound jointly by their ligands.[288,342] Gram-negative LPS activates TLR4 indirectly by first binding to LBP, which transfers the LPS to the host accessory protein CD14 at the cell surface. The bound CD14 has no transmembrane domain but associates directly with an extracellular domain of TLR4.[413,538] MD-2, an additional accessory protein associated with TLR4, also plays a role in binding LPS.[434] TLR5 has been identified as the receptor for bacterial flagellin, TLR9 recognizes CpG motifs of bacterial and viral DNA, and TLR3 has been shown to bind synthetic and viral double-stranded RNA.[56,255,319,323] A listing of known human TLRs with their major ligands and cellular distribution is summarized in Table 2.1.

Signaling by TLRs occurs via a well-described pathway in which receptor binding generates a signal via an adaptor molecule, myeloid differentiation factor 88 (MyD88), that leads to intracellular association with IL-1 receptor–associated kinase (IRAK). In turn, this leads to activation of TNF receptor–associated factor–6 (TRAF-6), which results in nuclear translocation of nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB).[133] NF-κB is an important transcription factor that activates the promoters of the genes for a broad range of cytokines and other proinflammatory products, such as TNF-α, IL-1, IL-6, and IL-8. This signaling pathway, based on studies with TLR4, is similar but not identical to the signaling pathways activated by other TLRs.[133] The activation of cytokine production by TLRs plays an important role in recruiting other components of innate host defense against bacterial pathogens. However, with large-scale cytokine release, the deleterious effects of sepsis or other forms of the systemic inflammatory response syndrome demonstrate that these

TABLE 2.1 Human Toll-Like Receptors: Their Ligands and Cellular Distribution

TLR	Ligands	Cellular Distribution
TLR1 (+TLR2) TLR2 (+TLR6)	Mycobacterial lipoarabinomannans, bacterial lipoproteins, bacterial lipoteichoic acids, bacterial and fungal β-glucans	Mo, DC, MC, Eos, Bas, AEC
TLR3	Viral double-stranded RNA	NK cell
TLR4 (+CD14, MD-2)	Bacterial lipopolysaccharide	MΦ, DC, MC, Eos, AEC
TLR5	Bacterial flagellin	AEC, IEC
TLR7	Viral single-stranded RNA	PDC, NK, Eos, BL
TLR8	Viral single-stranded RNA	NK cell
TLR9	Unmethylated CpG dinucleotides	PDC, Eos, BL, Bas (bacteria, herpesvirus)
TLR10	Unknown ligands	PDC, Eos, BL, Bas

AEC, Airway epithelial cell; *Bas,* basophil; *BL,* B lymphocyte; *DC,* dendritic cell; *Eos,* eosinophil; *IEC,* intestinal epithelial cell; *MΦ,* macrophage; *MC,* mast cell; *Mo,* monocyte; *NK,* natural killer; *PDC,* plasmacytoid dendritic cell; *TLR,* Toll-like receptor.

pathways have both beneficial and potentially harmful effects for the host.[133] Genetic polymorphisms in TLRs may play a role in determining the balance of these effects in certain individuals responding to the challenge of systemic infection.[133,352,353]

In addition to their "first responder" roles in generating an inflammatory response to invading pathogens, TLRs may network with other components of innate and adaptive immunity. TLR4 function is suppressed by activation of cells via the chemokine receptor CXCR4.[307] Activation of some TLRs also can induce expression of the costimulatory molecule B7 on antigen-presenting cells, which is required for activation of naïve T cells.[370]

Cytokines

A heterogeneous group of soluble small polypeptide or glycoprotein mediators, often collectively called cytokines, forms part of a complex network that helps regulate immune and inflammatory responses. Included in this group of mediators, whose molecular weights range from about 8 to about 45 kDa, are the ILs, IFNs, growth factors, and chemokines (see separate discussions later). Most cells of the immune system and many other host cell types release cytokines, respond to cytokines via specific cytokine receptors, or both. A list of cytokines and related molecules that play a role in immune function, with selected characteristics, is provided in Table 2.2.[322,422,443] Excellent general reviews are available,[321,322,347,422,443] and the use of cytokines as immunomodulating agents is discussed in Chapter 242. However, two cytokines, IL-1 and TNF-α, are of such fundamental importance in acute host responses to infection that they warrant specific attention here.

IL-1 and TNF-α are small polypeptides, each with a molecular weight of approximately 17 kDa, that exhibit a broad range of effects on immunologic responses, inflammation, metabolism, and hematopoiesis.[66,422] IL-1 originally was described as "endogenous pyrogen," referring to its ability to produce fever in experimental animals, and TNF-α, which produces some of the same effects produced by IL-1, was originally named "cachectin" after the wasting syndrome it produced when injected chronically in mice.[66,422] Many of the physiologic changes associated with gram-negative sepsis can be reproduced by injecting experimental animals with these cytokines, including fever, hypotension, and either neutrophilia or leukopenia.[66,422] In the development of endotoxic shock resulting from gram-negative sepsis, IL-1 and TNF-α are produced by mononuclear phagocytes in response to activation of TLRs by bacterial LPS. They in turn activate the production of other cytokines and chemokines, lipid mediators such as platelet-activating factor and prostaglandins, and reactive oxygen species. They also induce expression of adhesion molecules of both endothelial cells and leukocytes, stimulating recruitment of leukocytes by inducing release of the chemokine IL-8 and activating neutrophils for phagocytosis, degranulation, and oxidative burst activity.[66,133] These are all important, usually beneficial host responses to infection. However, at very high levels of activation,

TABLE 2.2 Features of Selected Human Cytokines and Growth Factors

Cytokines and Growth Factors	Main Cellular Sources	Biologic Effects
IL-1	Mo, TL, BL, NK, PMN, others	Broad range of cellular activation in inflammatory and immune responses
IL-2	TL, BL, NK	TL, BL proliferation and activation; enhances TL and NK cytotoxicity
IL-3	TL	General stimulation of hematopoiesis
IL-4	TL, BL, Mast, Mo	TL, BL proliferation; BL isotype switching; stimulates IgE synthesis; enhances MHC class II expression
IL-5	TL	Stimulation of Eos production
IL-6	TL, BL, Mo	Broad inflammatory activity; stimulates BL differentiation and megakaryocyte production
IL-7	Marrow and thymus stromal cells	TL, BL growth and differentiation
IL-8	Mac, Mo, Endo, Epi, PMN, Eos	Activation and chemotaxis of PMN, Eos
IL-9	TL	Mast growth and differentiation; growth of activated TL
IL-10	TL, BL, Mast, Mac	Broad antiinflammatory actions; inhibits synthesis of several other cytokines (TNF, IL-2, IL-3, IFN-γ)
IL-11	Marrow stromal cells	General stimulation of hematopoiesis; BL growth and differentiation
IL-12	BL, Mo	Stimulation of TL growth; induction of IFN-γ production; enhancement of TL and NK cytotoxicity
IL-13	TL	BL proliferation and isotype switching; enhances MHC class II expression; inhibits production of cytokines by Mac
IL-14	TL, malignant BL	Induces BL growth
IL-15	Epi, Endo, Mo, Mac, marrow stromal cells	Enhances NK growth, development, function; enhances TL growth and migration
IL-17	TL	Enhances TL growth; induces Mac cytokine release
IL-18	Kupffer cells, Epi, spleen, Mac	Promotes TL, BL, NK cytokine release; promotes TL, BL cytotoxicity
IL-21	TL	Promotes BL, TL proliferation; NK cytoxicity
IL-23	Dendritic cells, Mac	Similar to IL-12
IL-25	TL (T_H2), Mast	TL, Mac T_H2 cytokine secretion
IL-27	Dendritic cells, Mac	TL responsiveness to IL-12
IFN-α	Mo, TL	Interference with viral replication; increases MHC class I expression
IFN-β	Epi, Fibro	Similar to IFN-α
IFN-γ	TL, NK	Similar to IFN-α, IFN-β; stimulates Mac inflammatory functions
TNF-α	Mo, Mac, TL, NK	Broad inflammatory effects; fever; cachexia; stimulates catabolism; activation of leukocytes and Endo
GM-CSF	TL, BL, Mo, PMN, Eos, Fibro, Mast, Endo	Growth of PMN, Eos, Mo, and Mac precursors; enhances leukocyte function
G-CSF	Mo, Epi, Fibro	Enhances production and function of granulocytes
M-CSF	Mo, TL, BL, Endo, Fibro	Promotes Mo production; stimulates Mo and Mac function

BL, B lymphocyte; *Endo,* endothelial cell; *Eos,* eosinophil; *Epi,* epithelial cell; *Fibro,* fibroblast; *G-CSF,* granulocyte colony-stimulating factor; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *IFN,* interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *Mac,* macrophage; *Mast,* mast cell; *M-CSF,* macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *Mo,* monocyte; *NK,* natural killer cell; *PMN,* polymorphonuclear leukocyte; *TL,* T lymphocyte; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.

pathologic effects of this proinflammatory cascade may occur, including vascular instability, decreased myocardial contractility, capillary leak, tissue hypoperfusion, coagulopathy, and multiple organ failure.[133,569] For some systemic actions, notably the production of hemodynamic shock, IL-1 and TNF-α are synergistic. Both IL-1 and TNF-α also induce production of IL-6, a somewhat less potent cytokine that exhibits some of the actions of IL-1 and TNF-α.[422] The human host produces several soluble antagonists of IL-1 and TNF-α that can modulate their effects, including IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1ra), soluble TNF-α receptor (sTNF-αR), and antiinflammatory cytokines, especially IL-10.[133]

The importance of effects mediated by IL-1 and TNF-α in the pathophysiology of septic shock has prompted much active research aimed at blocking their direct and downstream effects to reduce sepsis morbidity and mortality. To date, despite promise and progress, clinical strategies to interfere with the cytokine-induced cascade that leads to endotoxin shock have continued, overall, to meet with limited success.[29,43,96,133,212,422,456,562,572]

Chemokines

A specialized group of small cytokine-like polypeptides, chemokines, which all share the feature of being ligands for G-protein–coupled, seven-transmembrane-segment receptors, play a complex role in the immune response as cellular activators that induce directed cell migration mainly of immune and inflammatory cells.[44,285,304,363,393,472] The chemokines and their receptors have been classified into four families based on the motif displayed by the first two cysteine residues of the respective chemokine peptide sequence. Each of at least 16 CXC chemokines binds to one or more of the CXCRs, CXCR1 to -6. Examples of CXC chemokines include IL-8 and Gro-α. Similarly, at least 28 CC chemokines, such as macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-1α; regulated and normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES); and eotaxin-1, -2, and -3 bind to one or more of the CCRs, CCR1 to -10. The sole CX3C chemokine, fractalkine (neurotaxin), binds to CX3CR1, currently the only receptor in its family. The two XC chemokines, including lymphotaxin, bind to the sole receptor in this family, XCR1. A chemokine nomenclature currently designates each of the chemokines as a numbered ligand for its respective receptor family. In this system, Gro-α is CXC ligand (L)-1 (or CXCL-1), and IL-8 now becomes CXCL-8. Similarly, RANTES becomes CCL-5, fractalkine is CX3CL-1, and lymphotactin is XCL-1.[285,472] A review of this nomenclature system tabulates the members of each family with their respective ligands and receptors, as well as with the traditional names in both human and murine systems.[285]

Virtually every cell type of the immune system expresses receptors for one or more of the chemokines. The cells of virtually any inflamed tissue can release a range of chemokines, and tissues infected with different bacteria or viruses release chemokines that recruit characteristic sets of immune cells.[235,304] For example, whereas rhinoviruses induce the release of chemokines that result mainly in recruitment of neutrophils (early in the course of infection), Epstein-Barr virus induces a set of chemokines that result in recruitment of B cells, NK cells, and both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells.[235] It is of interest that almost mutually exclusive sets of chemokines are induced by cytokines associated with T_H1 (IFN-γ) versus T_H2 (IL-4, IL-13) versus T_H17 (IL-17) immune responses (see later discussion), indicating a tight interplay between cytokines and chemokines in determining the type of immune response to specific infectious challenges generated under differing conditions.[71] The specificity of such responses is strongly influenced by the type of chemokines released by specific tissues, the vascular adhesion molecules expressed in those tissues, the chemokine receptors expressed by different leukocyte populations, and the specific adhesion molecules expressed by leukocytes.[71,235,304]

Modulation of chemokine functions may occur by several mechanisms. Chemokines themselves may be potentiated or inactivated by tissue proteases including tissue peptidases and matrix metalloproteases.[369] Heparin sulfate–related proteoglycans on endothelial cell surfaces tether chemokines locally, where they can most efficiently activate circulating leukocytes for adhesion (see later discussion). However, similar proteoglycans free in the extracellular environment may act to bind and sequester chemokines, keeping them from interacting with their cellular receptors.[136,324] Finally, in addition to the well-described use of chemokine receptors as coreceptors for viral entry by HIV-1, other viruses, especially members of the herpesvirus family, encode soluble decoy receptors that compete with native host receptors for chemokine binding, thereby disrupting normal host responses.[136,469]

Natural Killer Cells

NK cells are an important cellular component of innate immunity. They are lymphoid cells found in the peripheral circulation, spleen, and bone marrow that do not express clonally distributed receptors, such as T-cell receptors or surface immunoglobulin, for specific antigens.[387,388,513] They respond in an antigen-independent manner to aid in the control of malignant tumors and to help contain viral infections, especially those caused by members of the herpesvirus family, before the development of adaptive immune responses.[513,514] Activated NK cells are an important source of IFN-γ, which limits tumor angiogenesis and promotes the development of specific protective immune responses.[387,388,513,514]

Regulation of NK cell activity involves a complex balance between activating and inhibitory signals. Several cytokines can activate NK cell proliferation, cytotoxicity, or IFN-γ production, including IL-12, IL-15, IL-18, IL-21, and IFN-αβ.[514] Activating signals via other receptors on NK cells, such as NKG2D, may lead either to cytotoxicity or cytokine production or both, depending on the receptor's association with distinct intracellular adaptor proteins that signal via different kinases.[514,566] Other molecules on NK cells may act as either costimulatory or adhesion receptors, including CD27, CD28, CD154 (CD40 ligand), and lymphocyte function–associated (LFA)-1 (CD11a/CD18).[50,514] Additionally, FcγRIII (CD16) can contribute to NK cell–mediated antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity.[200,387] NK cells are able to distinguish normal cells of self-origin via receptors that recognize specific MHC class I molecules. Activation of such receptors provides an inhibitory signal that protects healthy host cells from NK cell–mediated lysis. Virus-infected cells and malignant cells may express MHC class I molecules at reduced levels, rendering them more susceptible to attack by NK cells.[120,513] NK cell inhibitory receptors, some of which have been characterized, appear to contain intracytoplasmic tyrosine-based inhibition motifs and antagonize NK cell activation pathways via protein tyrosine phosphatases.[454,514]

NK cells kill virus-infected or malignant cells by the release of perforin and granzymes from granular storage compartments and by binding of the death receptors Fas and TRAIL-R on target cells via their respective NK cell ligands.[485,513,514] The mechanisms by which perforin and granzymes mediate target cell death are not fully understood. One or more of the granzymes appear to activate intracellular pathways leading to target cell apoptosis via pathways that involve the mitochondria or caspases or both.[300,553] Separately, binding of the death receptors also activates caspases, causing target cell apoptosis.[494,514] NK cells engage in several kinds of interactions with other cells of the immune system, including dendritic cells and other antigen-presenting cells. Dendritic cells can influence the proliferation and activation of NK cells both by release of cytokines, including IL-12, and by cell surface interactions, including CD40/CD40L, LFA-1/ICAM-1, and CD27/CD70.[164] In return, NK cells can provide signals that result in either dendritic cell maturation or apoptosis.[120,513]

Complement System

The complement system consists of more than 30 different free and membrane-bound activation and regulatory proteins. It has multiple key roles in the clearance of invading microbes, including opsonization, recruitment of phagocytic cells, and lytic destruction of pathogens.[59,168,169,188,189,208,290,289,292,392]

Approximately 90% of complement proteins are synthesized in the liver, but some components can be produced locally at sites of infection by tissue mononuclear phagocytes and fibroblasts.[134,438] In healthy persons the majority of complement is found in the circulation. Circulating complement levels vary over time, particularly in the presence of inflammation. The inflammatory response may lead to increases in levels of those complement components such as C3 that are acute-phase reactants or to decreases in individual components and total complement activity as a result of consumption.

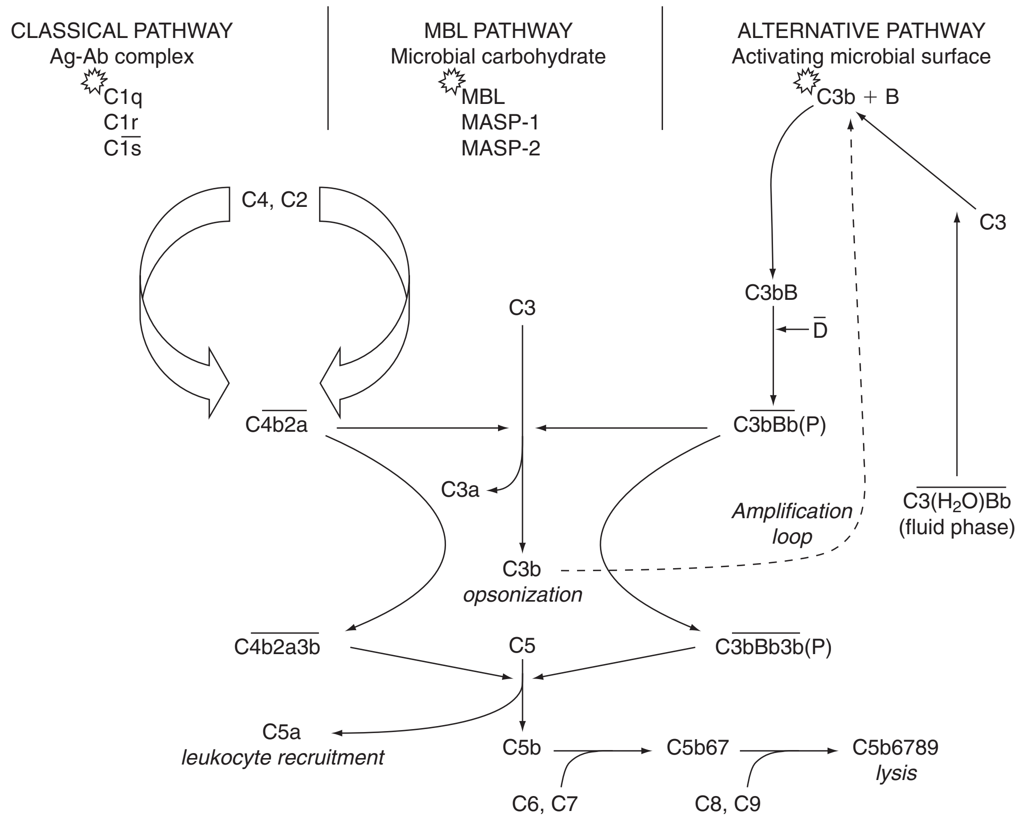


FIG. 2.1 The complement cascade. The initial binding events of the classical, mannan-binding lectin (MBL) and alternative pathways are indicated by a *starburst*. These pathways intersect at the conversion of *C3* to *C3b*. This is followed by activation of the terminal components, beginning with the binding and cleavage of *C5*, releasing *C5a* and leaving bound *C5b* to initiate assembly of the remaining components to form the membrane attack complex *(C5b6789)*. Enzymatically active proteases of the classical and alternative pathways that cleave and activate subsequent components are, by convention, shown with an *overbar*. The alternative pathway *C3* and *C5* convertases are shown associated with properdin (P), which increases their stability. *B*, Complement factor B; *D*, complement factor D; *MASP*, MBL-associated serine proteases.

The importance of normal complement component levels and activity in host defense has been well established and is based primarily on the increased susceptibility of patients with specific complement component deficiencies to recurrent or severe bacterial infections.[166,168,188,289,290] Although the complement response to infection usually is beneficial to the host, it also may be associated with adverse clinical manifestations such as septic shock and acute respiratory distress syndrome.[158,203,576]

Complement activation. Complement proteins are activated in a specific sequence or "cascade" via one or more of three pathways: the classical pathway, the alternative pathway, and the more recently described MBL pathway, as shown in Fig. 2.1. These pathways converge at C3, and the complement cascade downstream from C3 proceeds identically, irrespective of the pathway by which activation occurs. The C3 convertases, C4b2a for the classical and MBL pathways and C3bBb for the alternative pathway, cleave the C3 molecule at exactly the same location, producing C3b, which binds to the target surface, and C3a, which is released into the fluid phase. Cleavage and activation of C3 lead to a conformational change in C3b that transiently renders its reactive thioester group capable of forming covalent ester or amide bonds with acceptor molecules on the target surface.[276,331] Surface-bound C3b can act as an opsonin to promote phagocytosis, or it can bind with the classical and alternative pathway C3 convertases to form the C5 convertases C4b2a3b and C3bBb3b, respectively.[452] C5 convertases bind and then cleave C5, with release of the chemoattractant C5a fragment into the fluid phase. The bound C5b fragment then can initiate formation of the membrane attack complex by the sequential incorporation of the remaining terminal components, C6, C7, C8, and multiple molecules of C9. The membrane attack complex can insert into the outer membrane of target cells, such as erythrocytes or gram-negative bacteria, and cause cell lysis and death.[292]

Classical pathway. Ordinarily the classical pathway is activated by IgM or IgG bound to microbial antigenic targets or by other kinds of antigen-antibody complexes.[169] IgM activates complement more efficiently than IgG because only one molecule of polymeric IgM is required in contrast to at least two molecules of IgG.[141] Activation typically is initiated when C1q binds directly to an immunoglobulin molecule on the surface of an organism. C1r and C1s are activated and bound to C1q sequentially, forming C1qrs. The enzymatic activity of this complex, which resides in the C1s molecule, can cleave multiple molecules of C4 and C2 into two fragments each. The C4a and C2b fragments are released into the environment, whereas C4b and C2a remain bound to each other on the target surface to form the classical pathway C3 convertase, C4b2a. C4bC2a can cleave and activate C3 and localize C3b binding to nearby sites on the target surface. As noted earlier, some C3b binds with C4b2a to form the classical pathway C5 convertase, C4b2a3b.

Alternative pathway. Alternative pathway activation of C3 is the principal means by which a nonimmune host can activate the effector functions of complement until a specific antibody response can be mounted.[167,205]

A spontaneous low level of hydrolysis of the thioester of C3 in the fluid phase results in an activated form of C3, C3(H_2O). This activated form of C3 can bind factor B, and the latter is then cleaved by factor D to form the fluid phase C3 convertase C3(H_2O)Bb. The constitutive presence of small amounts of this convertase in the fluid phase ensures that a small amount of C3b always is available to bind to microbial surfaces and initiate the alternative pathway.[432] The alternative pathway protein factor B can bind to surface-bound C3b, after which factor B undergoes proteolytic cleavage by factor D to release a small soluble fragment, Ba, while the larger fragment, Bb, remains associated with

C3b. C3bBb, the alternative pathway C3 convertase, is analogous to the classical pathway C3 convertase, C4b2a. Properdin stabilizes the C3 convertase C3bBb, permitting more efficient activation of C3 to form more C3b, creating the C3 amplification loop (see Fig. 2.1).[202,205]

The most important factor in determining whether a specific microbial pathogen will activate the alternative pathway is the biochemical nature of its surface. On surfaces rich in sialic acid, bound C3b is less able to bind factor B because another molecule, factor H, has a strong competitive advantage over factor B under these conditions. When bound by factor H, C3b becomes highly susceptible to further cleavage by factor I (C3b inactivator), resulting in C3bi (or iC3b). Although C3bi is an effective opsonin, it cannot bind factor B. Thus no alternative pathway convertases can be formed, and no amplification loop is established.[59,325,392] Organisms whose surfaces do not support activation of the alternative pathway, such as K1 *Escherichia coli,* groups A and B streptococci, *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Neisseria meningitidis, Haemophilus influenzae* type b, and some salmonellae are some of the most successful pathogens in infants and young children who lack specific protective antibodies.[115,292]

Mannan-binding lectin pathway. The most recently described complement activation pathway is the MBL pathway. It is similar to the classical pathway but does not involve antibodies. MBL is a serum protein of the collectin family that has structural and functional similarities to those of C1q. However, it does not require antigen-antibody complexes to initiate its complement-activating function. MBL binds to mannose-containing carbohydrates on microbial surfaces, leading to its association at the microbial surface with activated MBL-associated serine proteases (MASP-1 and -2). These latter proteases have structural and functional similarities to C1r and C1s, respectively, and result in activation of C4, with sequential binding of C4b and C2a and formation of C4b2a, the C3 convertase of the classical pathway. C3 is activated, and the cascade proceeds as described. A more detailed characterization of the MBL pathway and its role in immune responses to infection may be found in an excellent review.[440]

Effector functions of complement in host defense. The principal complement effector functions in host defense include opsonization via bound fragments of C3; phagocyte recruitment, especially via release of C5a; lysis of microorganisms, especially gram-negative bacteria, via the membrane attack complex (C5b–C9); and immune regulation via interactions with host cells involved in adaptive immunity. Complement sometimes may be activated and bound to microbial surfaces but unable to carry out these functions if it is bound at a disadvantageous location; for example, C3b bound to a pneumococcal cell wall beneath a thick polysaccharide capsule or C5b–C9 bound to long lipopolysaccharide molecules distant from the gram-negative bacterial outer membrane.[93,240,277,292]

Opsonic activity. Complement opsonic activity is essential for effective phagocytic removal of organisms from the circulation by macrophages in the liver and spleen and from other sites by local macrophages and neutrophils.[78] Opsonins facilitate recognition, binding, ingestion, and killing of microorganisms by phagocytes. Opsonization particularly is important for protection against gram-positive bacteria and fungi because their thick cell walls prevent them from being killed by the membrane attack complex.

The major complement-derived opsonins are the C3 fragments C3b and iC3b. Surface-bound C3b and iC3b permit microbes to be recognized by circulating and tissue phagocytes by interacting with the phagocyte surface complement receptors CR1 (CD35) and CR3 (CD11b/CD18), respectively. These interactions lead to binding, ingestion, and intracellular killing of the organisms.[117,240,277,276,331]

Antibodies, especially of the IgG class, are important opsonins in their own right, but they also facilitate more rapid complement activation via the classical pathway and more effective localization of C3b binding to the surface of encapsulated organisms, where it is accessible to phagocyte receptors.[93,277,294]

Inflammation. The cleavage products of several complement proteins contribute to the development of inflammatory responses. C3a stimulates an increase in the number of circulating granulocytes, and C5a serves as a potent stimulus for monocyte, neutrophil, and eosinophil migration toward the source of C5a gradients being produced at infected tissue sites. C5a also upregulates phagocyte expression of CR1 and CR3 and stimulates these cells to release granule contents that also are important mediators of inflammation and microbicidal activity. C5a-induced neutrophil aggregation and stasis in the pulmonary circulation can be an important feature of the respiratory distress syndrome associated with sepsis.[576]

The anaphylatoxins, C4a, C3a, and especially C5a, induce release of histamine from mast cells and basophils, causing increased vascular dilation and permeability, which, in turn, permit local diffusion of other inflammatory mediators.[279,576] When large quantities of anaphylatoxins are produced rapidly, they can contribute to septic shock.[203]

Microbicidal activity. As noted earlier, C5b and the terminal complement proteins C6, C7, C8, and C9 form the membrane attack complex, which can lyse gram-negative bacteria by penetrating their outer membranes.[292] The C5b-C8 complex serves as a polymerization site for several molecules of C9, which increases the efficiency of lysis.[68,539] As has been noted, the membrane attack complex cannot penetrate the thick cell walls of gram-positive bacteria and fungi and therefore cannot kill these organisms directly. The membrane attack complex can lyse some virus-infected host cells and some enveloped viruses themselves.[143]

Immune regulation. Complement components and fragments can modulate immune responses, both directly by binding to CR1, CR2, and CR3 on the surfaces of T cells, B cells, and other cells involved in antigen recognition and indirectly by stimulating the synthesis and release of cytokines.[195] For example, the C3b cleavage product, C3dg, when covalently bound to antigen, brings the antigen close to B cells by binding to B-cell CR2 (CD21).[70,84,113] C3 influences antigenic localization within germinal centers, and it is involved in anamnestic responses and isotype switching. Additionally, C1-, C2-, C4-, and C3-deficient animals have decreased antibody responses that can be restored by providing the missing protein,[70,84,113] and C2 deficiency in humans also has been associated with antibody deficiencies.[15,113]

Phagocytes

PMNs, the most abundant circulating phagocytes in the human host, will serve as a model for discussing phagocyte functions. These cells constitute a major line of defense against invading bacteria and fungi. The proliferation of myeloid marrow progenitors and their differentiation into mature progeny are regulated by specific growth factors and cytokines.[45,345,346,547] The normal half-life of circulating PMNs is approximately 8 to 12 hours.[365,570] In the absence of active infection, most PMNs leave the circulation via the gingival crevices and the lower gastrointestinal tract, where the resident flora stimulate ongoing local extravasation of PMNs, a process that helps maintain the integrity of these tissues.[29] In response to invasive bacterial infection, circulating PMNs engage in three major functions: (1) migration to the site of infection, (2) recognition and ingestion of invading microorganisms, and (3) killing and digestion of these organisms.

Phagocyte recruitment to infected sites. Activation of endothelial cells that line the microvessels of acutely infected tissue occurs via locally produced cytokines, eicosanoid compounds, and microbial products.[110,505] As a result, the endothelial cells rapidly upregulate their surface expression of P-selectin from preformed intracellular storage pools and, subsequently, of E-selectin by new synthesis.[344,509] These selectins interact with the fucosylated tetrasaccharide moiety sialyl Lewis X, which is presented on constitutively expressed glycoproteins on PMNs including L-selectin and P-selectin glycoprotein ligand–1 (PSGL-1).[328,344,598] These early interactions slow the PMNs in this first adhesive phase of leukocyte recruitment, sometimes described as "slow rolling."[67,110,505] Within several hours, newly synthesized ICAM-1 is expressed at the endothelial surface.[110,505,508] The slowly rolling PMNs are activated by transient selectin-mediated interactions and locally produced mediators, especially endothelium-derived chemokines such as IL-8.[343] These chemokines are most effective in PMN activation when they are bound by complex proteoglycans at the endothelial cell surface.[324,573] The activated PMNs then signal the conformational activation of binding function of their surface β_2 integrins LFA-1 and Mac-1,[171,563] as well as translocating an additional large quantity of Mac-1 from intracellular storage pools to the cell surface.[60,80,82] This newly translocated Mac-1 also may undergo conformational activation as the PMN is exposed to increasing

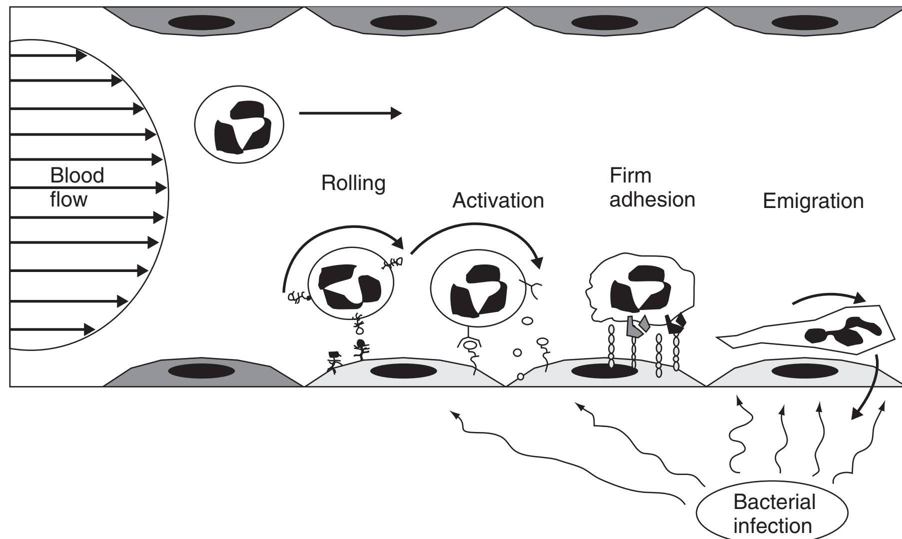


FIG. 2.2 Events during leukocyte (polymorphonuclear leukocytes [PMNs]) recruitment to infected sites. Interactions between microorganisms in infected tissue and host cells and proteins result in elaboration of mediators that diffuse to the local microcirculation and stimulate the endothelial cells. This induces new surface expression of P-selectin and E-selectin, release of interleukin-8 and other chemokines, and new surface expression of intercellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1). The endothelial selectins bind to constitutively expressed carbohydrate ligands on circulating PMNs and slow the passage of the PMNs through the microvessels. As the PMNs slow further, they become activated by interaction with chemokines bound to complex glycopeptides on the endothelial surface. This activation of PMNs increases their expression and binding activity of the β_2 (CD11/CD18) integrins, Mac-1 and lymphocyte function–associated antigen–1 (LFA-1). Interactions between these integrins and ICAM-1 (and ICAM-2 in the case of LFA-1) lead to tight adhesion and spreading on the endothelial surface. These latter adhesive interactions also are used for migration between endothelial cells and through the subjacent extracellular matrix in response to the gradient of chemoattractants, such as C5a, chemokines, and bacterial peptides, released at the infected site. Homophilic interactions between PECAM-1 on the PMNs and endothelial cells (not diagrammed) also appear to contribute to transendothelial migration. (Courtesy Scott Seo, MD.)

concentrations of mediators.[171,269] These activated β_2 integrins interact with the endothelial cell ICAM-1 in this second, firm adhesion phase, which is necessary for transendothelial migration of the PMNs.[60,110,170,343,496,505,508] Other chemoattractants, such as C5a, N-formyl bacterial oligopeptides, and leukotrienes (e.g., LTB_4) that diffuse from the site of infection further activate PMNs and provide a chemotactic gradient for PMN migration into tissue.[177,232,393] The receptors for these chemoattractants, like the chemokine receptors, are G-protein coupled and have a seven-transmembrane-domain structure.[232,393] They constitute important sensory mechanisms of the PMNs for activating adhesion, directional orientation, and the contractile protein-dependent lateral movement of adhesion sites in the PMN membrane necessary for cell locomotion.[24,232,393,531] A scheme for PMN recruitment from the microcirculation into infected tissue is presented in Fig. 2.2. Although the specific stimuli and adhesion molecules may vary, this general scheme applies to the local recruitment of virtually all circulating cells of the immune system.[71,235,304]

Phagocytosis. After PMNs reach the site of infection, they must recognize and ingest, or phagocytose, the invading bacteria. Opsonization, especially with IgG and fragments of C3, greatly enhances phagocytosis.[277,293] Although nonopsonic phagocytosis may occur, only opsonin-mediated phagocytosis is considered here.[483,546] CR1 and CR3 are the main phagocytic receptors for opsonic C3b and iC3b, respectively.[60–62,204] When PMNs are activated by chemoattractants or other stimuli, CR1 and CR3 are rapidly translocated to the cell surface from intracellular storage compartments, thus increasing surface expression up to 10-fold.[60,204] Note that CR3 is identical to the adhesion-mediating integrin Mac-1.[35,60] CR1 and CR3 act synergistically with receptors for the Fc portion of antibodies, especially IgG.[34,293] Phagocytic cells may express up to three different types of IgG Fc receptors, or FcγRs, all of which can mediate phagocytosis.[200,556] FcγRI (CD64) is a high-affinity receptor that is expressed mainly on mononuclear phagocytes.[556] The two FcγRs ordinarily expressed on circulating PMN are FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16).[547,556] FcγRII is conventionally anchored in the cell membrane, exhibits polymorphisms that determine preferences for binding of certain IgG subclasses, and can directly activate PMN oxidative burst activity.[547,556,557] FcγRIII is expressed on PMNs as a glycolipid-anchored protein, although it is anchored conventionally on NK cells and macrophages.[482,549,556] Many phagocytes also express IgA FcRs, which promote phagocytosis and killing of IgA-opsonized bacteria.[278,385]

The engagement of phagocyte receptors with microbial opsonins on microbes locally activates cytoskeletal contractile elements, leading to engulfment of the microbe within a sealed phagosome.[530] This is followed by fusion of the phagosome with lysosomal compartments containing the phagocyte's array of microbicidal products.

Phagocyte microbicidal mechanisms. Intracellular killing by phagocytes, usually within the fused phagolysosome, involves microbicidal weapons that can be categorized as either oxygen-dependent or oxygen-independent.[466] The oxygen-dependent microbicidal mechanisms of phagocytes depend on a complex enzyme, reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase, which catalyzes the conversion of molecular oxygen (O_2) to superoxide anion (O_2^-), the reaction that is deficient in chronic granulomatous disease (see later discussion).[39,40,129] As the name suggests, the reaction catalyzed by this enzyme requires a supply of NADPH, which is supplied in turn by reactions of enzymes of the hexose monophosphate shunt. The NADPH oxidase is assembled at the plasma or phagolysosomal membrane of activated cells from six known components that include a cytochrome (α- and β-subunits, designated gp91*phox* and p22*phox*, respectively) and at least three cytosolic proteins, p40*phox*, p47*phox*, and p67*phox* ("phox" refers to phagocyte oxidase), along with a Rac-1 GTPase, which assemble with the membrane-associated components to form the active enzyme complex (Fig. 2.3).[40,80,129] Each of the main oxidant products derived from this enzyme's activity exhibits microbicidal activity, including the earliest

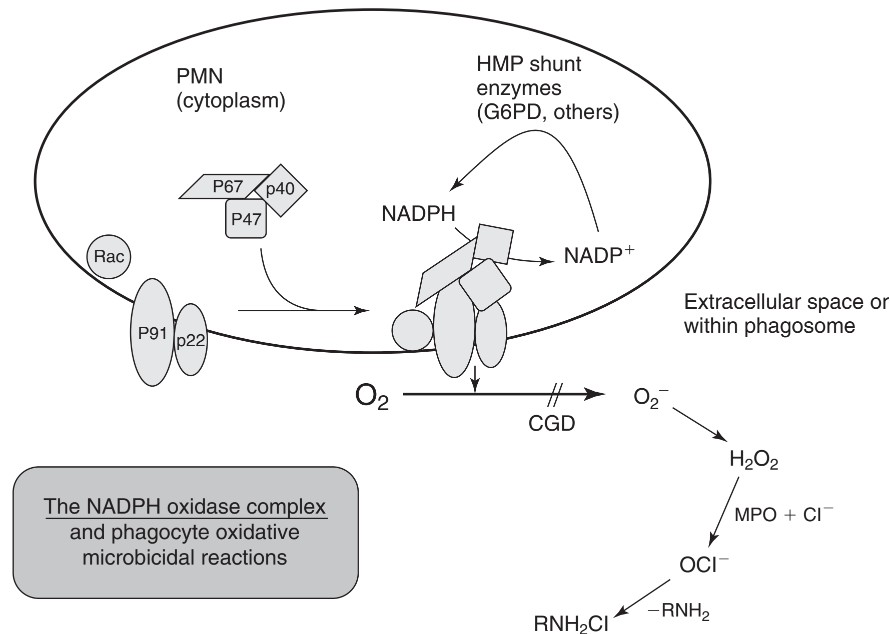


FIG. 2.3 The phagocyte reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH)-oxidase enzyme complex and the major reactions in the evolution of oxygen-dependent PMN microbicidal activity. The diagram depicts the six main components of the NADPH oxidase complex: the 91-kDa and 22-kDa subunits of the membrane-bound cytochrome; the 40-kDa, 47-kDa, and 67-kDa cytosolic components; and a Rac-1 signaling molecule. After assembly at the plasma or phagolysosome membrane, the enzyme catalyzes the conversion of molecular oxygen (O_2) to superoxide anion (O_2^-), the initial step in the sequence of production of oxidant antimicrobial products. This reaction requires a supply of NADPH, most of which is derived from activity of enzymes of the hexose monophosphate shunt (not shown). Shown in sequence are subsequent reactions for the spontaneous formation of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), the myeloperoxidase-catalyzed formation of hypochlorite (OCl^-), and formation of chloramines (RNH_2Cl).

products, O_2^- and H_2O_2, and the more potent downstream products hypochlorite (OCl^-) and chloramines (NH_3Cl, RNH_2Cl), with chloramines being the most stable.[248,466]

The oxygen-independent microbicidal activity of PMNs resides mainly in a group of proteins and peptides stored within their primary (azurophilic) granules and, to a lesser extent, in their secondary (specific) granules.[80,81,83,225] Lysozyme is contained in both the primary and the secondary (specific) granules of PMN.[522] It cleaves important linkages in the peptidoglycan of bacterial cell walls and is most effective when it can act in concert with the complement MAC.[293] The primary granules contain several cationic proteins with important microbicidal activity. A 59-kDa protein, bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein, is active against only gram-negative bacteria.[578] Smaller arginine- and cysteine-rich peptides, the α-defensins, similar to the β-defensins of epithelial cells, are active against a range of bacteria, fungi, chlamydiae, and enveloped viruses; other related molecules include cathelicidin and a group of peptides called p15s.[221,224,225,337,341] Some of these PMN proteins and peptides interact with each other synergistically to enhance overall antimicrobial activity.[340]

Important Interactions Among Innate Immune Mechanisms

A schematic overview of many of the main features of innate immunity discussed earlier, along with some of their important interactions, is diagrammed in Fig. 2.4. Several levels of interactions are depicted, from initial host-pathogen contact, through a variety of activating signals, to the attack by host effector mechanisms on their respective pathogenic targets.[545]

Adaptive Immune Responses

Adaptive immunity involves the host's antigen-specific responses to infectious challenges that can provide specific protection against subsequent challenges by the same infectious agent. The major steps in the development of adaptive immunity include the processing and presentation of specific antigens to T lymphocytes (T cells) by antigen-presenting cells (APCs); the activation and differentiation of T cells for specific cytotoxic T-cell activity, T-cell cytokine production, and T-cell help in activating antigen-specific B cells; and the differentiation of activated B cells into plasma cells for the production of specific antibodies. Whereas the innate immune responses described earlier often occur in a matter of minutes to hours and may activate early cellular responses that are essential for the development of adaptive immunity, the full development of most adaptive immune responses requires days to weeks. Once developed, however, the latter often can provide durable protection. A summary of the major events in the adaptive immune response to infection is diagrammed in Fig. 2.5.

Antigen Presentation and Specific Cell-Mediated Immunity

Specific cell-mediated immunity provides T-cell help for antibody production by B cells, cytokine production for the stimulation and regulation of a range of immune responses, and cytotoxic T-cell activity against host cells infected with viruses.[175,391,436] The development of cell-mediated immunity requires complex interactions between T cells and APCs via several types of surface molecules on the respective cell surfaces. These include binding of an antigen-specific T-cell receptor on the T lymphocyte to a peptide antigen presented on the class I or II MHC by the APCs, with concurrent binding of the class I or class II MHC by CD8 or CD4, respectively,[144,543] as represented in Fig. 2.6. Other respective pairs of cell-surface molecules that enhance interactions between T cells and APCs include CD40 ligand/CD40, LFA-1/ICAM-1, and CD28/B7. An additional molecule, cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen–4 (CTLA-4), expressed on activated T cells, also can bind to B7 molecules on APCs to generate a suppressive signal that may terminate T-cell activation.[543] The sustained physical interface between T cells and APCs at which these molecular interactions take place has been characterized as the "immunologic synapse."[32,92,242]

Class I major histocompatibility complex. Virtually all human cells except neurons express class I MHC.[152,153] The class I MHC molecule presents antigenic peptides to $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes.[67,407] It consists of a heavy chain that contains both the peptide-binding domain and a transmembrane domain and a smaller extracellular subunit,

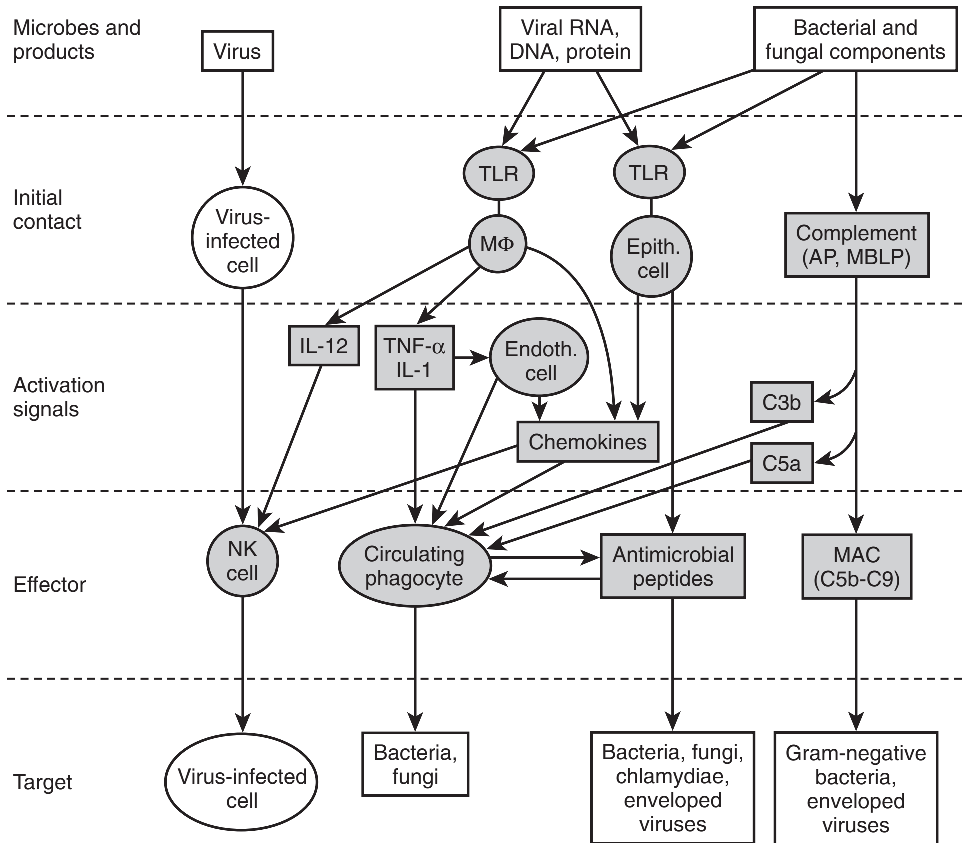


FIG. 2.4 Innate immunity: first contact, intermediate signals, and effector mechanisms. Diagrammed are important host responses to infection that are independent of specific cell-mediated immunity or antibodies. Initial contact between the host and microbes or their products may result in viral infection of cells, activation of Toll-like receptors (TLR) on macrophages (MΦ) and epithelial cells, and activation of the alternative pathway (AP) or mannose-binding lectin pathway (MBLP) of complement. The resulting activation signals, including cytokines (e.g., interleukin [IL]-12, tumor necrosis factor α [TNF-α], IL-1), chemokines, and products of the complement cascade mobilize both cellular (natural killer [NK] cells, phagocytes) and humoral (antimicrobial peptides, membrane attack complex [MAC]) effectors that attack their respective microbial targets. (From Tosi MF. Innate immune responses to infection. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2005;116:241–9.)

β_2-microglobulin.[73,462] The three major types of class I MHC heavy chains in humans, human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C, have at least 22, 31, and 12 different alleles, respectively.[597] This polymorphism permits a great diversity in the peptide-binding repertoire in individuals and within populations. A restricted degree of MHC genetic polymorphism has been invoked as a possible explanation for the predisposition of certain populations to develop infections.[74] Class I MHC molecules within the cell ordinarily bind peptides derived from recently synthesized proteins, either of self-origin or of infecting viruses.[198,199] A portion of newly synthesized proteins is processed into peptides at a cytoplasmic site, the proteasome.[236] These peptides are actively transported into the endoplasmic reticulum, where they are bound in the peptide-binding cleft of MHC class I. Suitable peptides usually are restricted to 8 to 10 amino acids in length, and they must contain certain amino acids at specific "anchor" positions on the peptide to bind.[280] Allelic variants of MHC class I may require different amino acids at these anchor positions.[218] The other amino acids of the peptide constitute the specific antigenic determinant. After trafficking of the MHC-peptide complex to the cell surface, the peptide antigen is recognized and bound by a specific T-cell receptor on $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T cells, which concurrently bind the heavy chain of MHC class I via CD8.[67,218,280,551]

Class II major histocompatibility complex. Mononuclear phagocytes, B lymphocytes, and dendritic cells, including specialized tissue-specific dendritic cells, such as the Langerhans cells of the skin, serve the immune system as "professional" APCs.[565] Dendritic cells, the most efficient APCs for primary activation of naïve T cells, are macrophage-like cells of a distinct lineage that take up and process antigens in tissues and migrate to local lymph nodes or to the spleen, where they are likely to encounter T cells specific for the presented antigens.[182,183,253,463] A defining feature of these professional APCs is their expression of class II MHC molecules in addition to class I MHC.[153] Class II MHC molecules consist of an α and a β chain, which together form a peptide-binding cleft.[94,475] Class II MHC molecules present peptides, 13 to 17 amino acids in length, derived from proteins that are internalized by endocytosis or during phagocytosis of microorganisms.[251,281,475] The three major types of class II MHC α and β chains are HLA-DR, HLA-DP, and HLA-DQ, each exhibiting a high degree of polymorphism.[460] MHC class II, bound to a separate smaller molecule known as the "invariant chain," traffics via the Golgi to endosomal/lysosomal compartments, where it must dissociate from the invariant chain to bind antigenic peptides derived from internalized proteins.[461,541,542] The class II MHC–peptide complexes then move to the cell surface, where the peptide antigens are bound by specific T-cell receptors of $CD4^+$ T cells, which concurrently bind class II MHC via CD4.[183,351]

Fig. 2.7 depicts the essential features of the conventional antigen presentation pathways that involve class I and class II MHC molecules, as described earlier. Alternative mechanisms have been documented by which class I MHC can present peptides derived from internalized exogenous proteins, and class II MHC may present peptides derived from newly synthesized proteins. The importance of these unconventional pathways of antigen presentation in the immune response is not fully

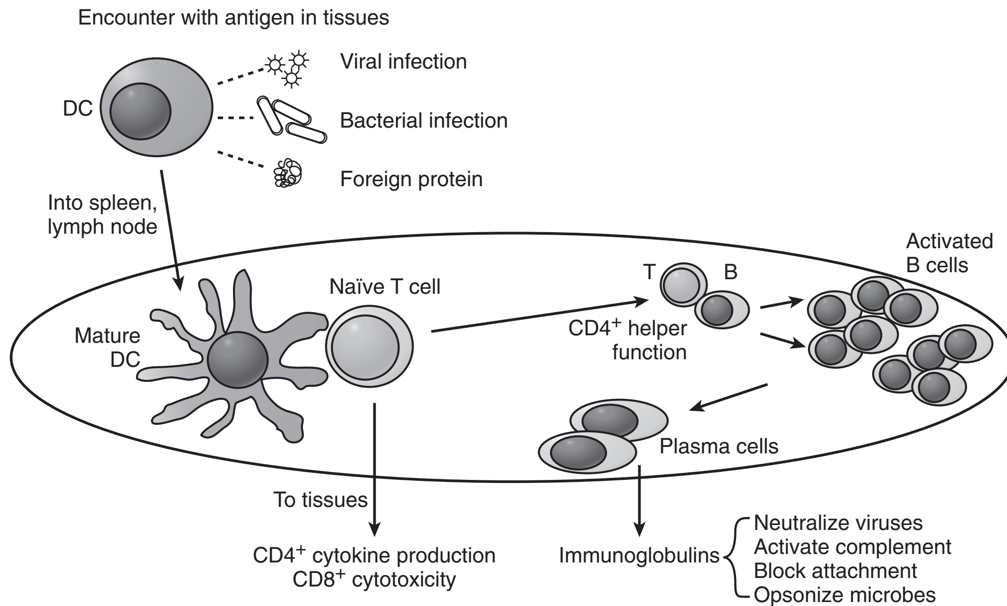


FIG. 2.5 A simplified scheme of major events in the development of adaptive immune responses. When antigen-presenting cells (APCs) such as dendritic cells (DCs) encounter and internalize microbes or their protein antigens in peripheral tissues, they process the microbial proteins and present the resulting antigenic peptides on either class I or class II MHC molecules. The activated APCs migrate to lymphoid tissue, where they undergo maturation. When mature dendritic cells encounter $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T cells expressing T-cell receptors specific for the peptides presented in the appropriate major histocompatibility complex (MHC) context (CD4/MHC-II; CD8/MHC-I), binding between the cells occurs via TCR-peptide, MHC-CD4/8, and other pairs of accessory molecules, all necessary for stimulating the T cells to become effector cells. Cytotoxic effector $CD8^+$ T cells migrate into the periphery and kill virus-infected cells that present viral peptides via MHC class I. Effector $CD4^+$ cells either migrate to the periphery where they produce cytokines and otherwise regulate immune responses or remain in the lymphoid tissue to provide help to antigen-specific B cells, promoting their proliferation, differentiation, and eventual production by their progeny plasma cells of specific antibodies that can neutralize viruses, prevent microbial attachment, opsonize microorganisms, or activate complement.

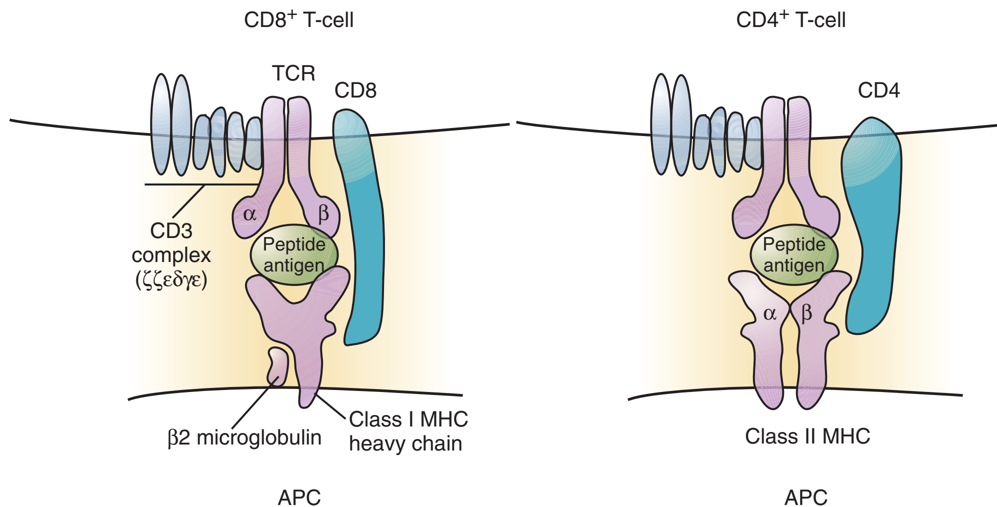


FIG. 2.6 Principal cell surface interactions between CD8 and CD4 T lymphocytes and peptide antigens complexed with major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I and class II molecules, respectively. CD3 (composed of six subunits, ζ, ζ, ε, δ, γ, ε) is associated closely with the T-cell receptor (TCR), which recognizes a specific peptide presented on MHC molecules. Class I and class II MHC determinants are recognized by CD8 and CD4, respectively. Additional or accessory interactions are discussed in the text. *APC*, Antigen-presenting cell. (Modified from Lewis DB, Wilson CB. Developmental immunology and role of host defenses in neonatal susceptibility to infection. In: Remington JS, Klein JO, editors. *Infectious Diseases of the Fetus and Newborn Infant.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2006:92.)

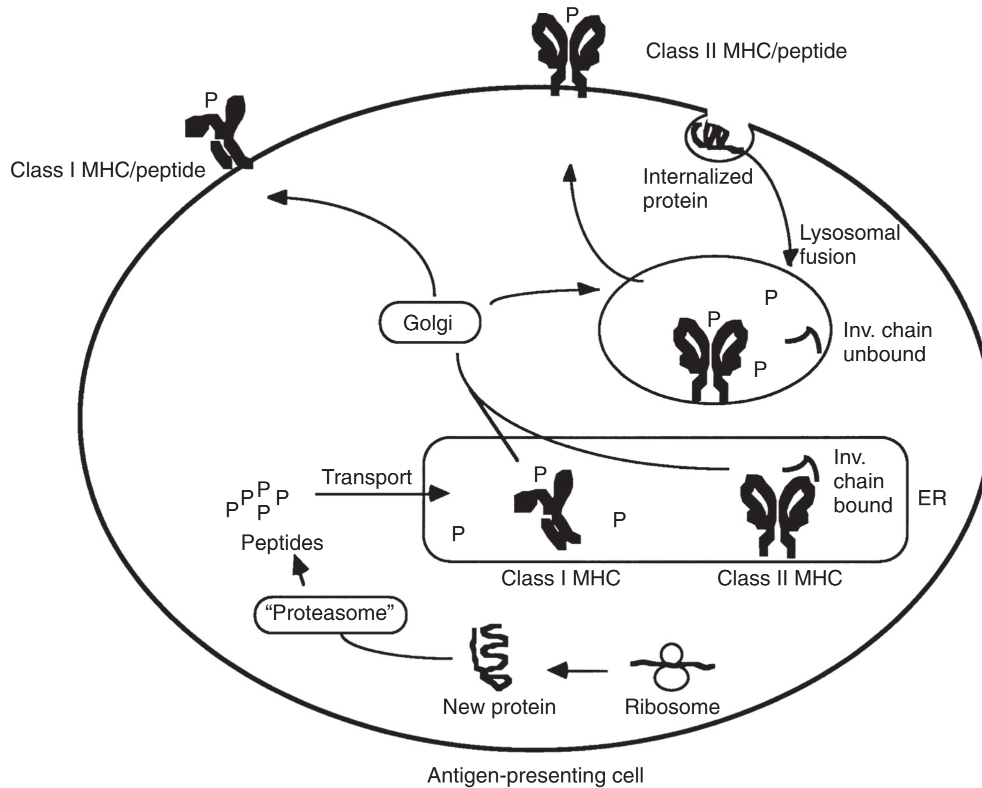


FIG. 2.7 Conventional pathways for peptide antigen presentation by class I and class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. In the antigen-presenting cell, a proportion of newly synthesized proteins, whether of viral or host origin, undergo proteolysis into peptides by enzymes that constitute the "proteasome." The peptides are transported actively into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), where those with the appropriate length and sequence bind to MHC class I molecules. MHC class II cannot bind peptides in the ER because of interference by the associated "invariant (inv.) chain." The class I MHC/peptide complex is transported via the Golgi to the cell surface, where it may be recognized by $CD8^+$ lymphocytes. Class II MHC molecules pass via the Golgi to a lysosomal compartment, where conditions favor the release of the invariant chain. This permits class II MHC to bind peptides derived from internalized proteins that have entered the lysosomal compartment via fusion of endosomes or phagosomes with the lysosome. The lysosome translocates to the cell surface, where the class II MHC/peptide complex may be recognized by $CD4^+$ lymphocytes.

understood, but evidence indicates that such "cross-presentation" may be important for generation of $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T-cell response against some viruses or fungi taken up via endocytosis by antigen-presenting cells.[36,348]

CD1 family of antigen-presenting molecules. The CD1 family includes proteins with significant homology and structural similarity to that of the MHC class I heavy chain but that present lipid and glycolipid antigens. All mammalian species express one or more members of the CD1 family, principally on professional antigen-presenting cells. Four human CD1 proteins, CD1a, CD1b, CD1c, and CD1d, have been identified, each tightly associated with a β_2-microglobulin subunit. Mycolic acid, lipoarabinomannans, and other related components of mycobacteria are the best-documented foreign antigens presented by CD1 molecules, and both internalized antigens and antigens synthesized within the antigen-presenting cells by ingested mycobacteria may be presented via distinct trafficking patterns of the CD1-antigen complexes. Antigens presented on antigen-presenting cells by CD1 molecules are recognized by a specialized subset of CD1-restricted T cells that usually lack CD4 and CD8; these are known as NK T cells. These cells share characteristics of both NK cells and T cells and exhibit a limited range of T-cell receptor specificity. Greater detail regarding the structure, function, phylogeny, trafficking, expression, and T-cell interactions for members of the CD1 family may be found in a recent review.[489]

Plasmacytoid dendritic cells. A specialized class of dendritic cells known as "plasmacytoid" dendritic cells plays a multifactorial role in both innate and adaptive immune responses. These cells are early responders to viral infections by virtue of their expression of TLR7/9 and their ability to produce large amounts of type 1 interferons that disrupt viral replication.[38,536] Additionally they can play an auxiliary role in the adaptive immune response by providing help to conventional dendritic cells during antigen presentation, apparently by helping to sustain IL-12 production by the latter in response to IFN-γ released by interacting T cells.[38,536]

T Lymphocytes

The development of T lymphocytes, or T cells, begins when prothymocytes leave the marrow and enter the subcapsular region of the thymus.[181] By mechanisms that are poorly understood, the thymic environment induces the rearrangement of T-cell receptor V (variable), D (diversity), and J (joining) gene segments with the eventual expression of mature α-β T-cell receptors complexed with CD3. The T cells, now coexpressing CD4 and CD8, migrate to the thymic cortex, where they undergo screening for T-cell receptor specificity both to optimize the repertoire for distinguishing self from nonself and to eliminate T-cell receptor rearrangements that result in undesirably high self-reactivity. Thymocytes that do not pass this dual screening procedure receive signals that induce programmed cell death (apoptosis).[373,394,567] Only about 5% of the original thymocytes pass this screening, after which they express either CD4 or CD8 but not both.[373,394,458,567] Mature thymocytes are released into the periphery, where the $CD4^+$ cells serve as the main source of IL-2 and provide help for B-cell antibody production, and the $CD8^+$ cells engage in specific cytotoxic activity.[231,391] This discussion of T cells and T-cell receptors specifically relates to T cells that express T-cell receptors composed of α and β chains, or α-β T cells. T

cells of a distinct type, γ-δ T cells, are far less numerous in most tissues (intestinal epithelium is a notable exception), exhibit much less T-cell receptor diversity than do α-β T cells, may not require an intact thymus for development, and play a role in host responses to certain intracellular bacterial pathogens, including *Listeria* and mycobacteria.[106,254]

Antigen specificity of α-β T cells resides in their T-cell receptors, which are integral membrane proteins that exhibit structural homology with immunoglobulins. T-cell receptor diversity results from a rearrangement of V, (D), and J segments.[226] There are up to 100 different V segments, one (D) segment, and as many as 100 different J segments in the complete germline configuration of the T-cell receptor genes. Rearrangement of these gene segments into a mature VDJ sequence occurs by the action of a recombinase enzyme complex formed by two proteins, RAG-1 and RAG-2.[417,488] T-cell receptor diversity is generated by several factors, including the range of possible combinations of V, (D), and J segments; the imprecise action of the recombinase complex; the variability in the number of nucleotides deleted during rearrangement; and the action of another enzyme, terminal deoxytransferase, which appears to add nucleotides at random to extend segments during rearrangement.[206,504] The actions of Artemis and DNA ligase IV, two enzymes critical for the processing and joining of DNA ends, introduce additional sources of variability.[99,191,355,585] It has been estimated that as many as 10^{15} different T-cell receptor specificities theoretically could result from the preceding mechanisms.[159]

Stimulation of naïve $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T cells occurs as they circulate through peripheral lymphoid tissue and encounter dendritic cells and other professional APCs. Localized T-cell migration is highly regulated by specific chemokines and adhesive interactions with local endothelium and involves mechanisms similar to those discussed earlier for circulating phagocytes.[185,320] When T cells engage APCs presenting specific peptide antigens on the appropriate MHC molecules, they are activated via their T-cell receptor and several costimulatory molecules, especially CD28, to produce IL-2 and proliferate and differentiate into effector T cells.[128,284]

Effector $CD4^+$ T cells may be of the T_H1 or T_H2 type, and this type is influenced by several factors, including the specific cytokines elicited by a particular microbial pathogen.[395] Naïve T cells activated in the presence of IL-12 and IFN-γ are likely to develop into T_H1 cells, whereas IL-4 and IL-6 tend to drive development in the direction of T_H2 cells.[390,395,397] Preferential development of T_H1 effector cells leads mainly to macrophage activation and cell-mediated immunity, whereas T_H2 effector cells help drive certain aspects of humoral immunity, including immunoglobulin class switching to IgE in allergic responses.[395] Until recently, before the identification of the T_{FH} subset (see later discussion), T_H2 cells were thought to be the principal cell in providing T-cell help for B-cell antibody production.

A third major subset of effector CD4 T cells are T_H17 cells, whose main function appears to involve protection against extracellular bacteria and fungi by stimulating phagocytic cell responses to these pathogens.[272,349,382] Their development is favored by the presence of IL-6 and TGF-β and by the absence of IL-4 and IL-12. They are distinguished by their ability to produce IL-17 cytokines, which in turn stimulate local tissues to produce chemokines, such as IL-8, that recruit neutrophils and other phagocytic cells to tissue sites.[272,349,382] Development of T_H17 cells involves production of IL-21, which acts in an autocrine fashion to activate signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3), a transcription factor that drives T_H17 cell development.[272,382]

In contrast to T_H1, T_H2, and T_H17 CD4 T cells, which exert their main effector functions in the periphery, a fourth T-cell subset, T follicular helper cells, or T_{FH} cells, appears to account for most of the CD4 T cells that provide help to B cells in the lymphoid follicles for antibody production.[306,411] T_{FH} cells are characterized by their location in lymphoid follicles, expression of the CXCR5 chemokine receptor, and their ability to secrete cytokines typical of both T_H1 and T_H2 cells.[306,411] The developmental origins of these cells in humans and their relationships and interactions with the other T-cell subsets are subjects of current research.

Activation of naïve $CD8^+$ T cells by antigen binding, costimulation by accessory binding molecules on antigen-presenting cells, and exposure to cytokines, including IL-2, all lead to clonal proliferation of specific $CD8^+$ cells and their differentiation into cytotoxic effector cells. Effector $CD4^+$ T cells bound in common to an APC may play a role in activating naïve $CD8^+$ T cells, either by releasing IL-2 or by activating the antigen-presenting cell to provide greater costimulation to the $CD8^+$ T cell to make its own IL-2.[31] Antigenically experienced effector $CD8^+$ T cells respond to specific antigenic peptides and costimulatory molecules on infected host cells by activating cytotoxic mechanisms similar to those described earlier for NK cells, including the release of both perforin and granzymes and the generation of receptor-mediated signals for target cell apoptosis.[345,476,552]

Regulatory T cells. The existence of T suppressor cells was long a subject of debate among immunologists. Within the past decade solid evidence has been developed to support the existence of suppressor T cells, now referred to as regulatory T cells, or T-regs. These cells were discovered when thymectomized mice were noted to develop autoimmune disease. Transfer of T cells that expressed CD25, the α chain of the IL-2 receptor, from normal adult mice to thymectomized mice prevented autoimmune disease. This population of $CD4^+CD25^+$ T-regs can suppress the activity of other immune cells and has been shown to prevent graft-versus-host disease and allograft rejection.[449] The mechanism of suppression by T-regs is uncertain but may involve direct contact with other cells or secretion of inhibitory cytokines, including IL-10.[349,484] These inhibitory cytokines can interfere with T-cell proliferation and inhibit the ability of antigen-presenting dendritic cells to promote T-cell activation.[349,484] The role of T-regs in immunity to infection is only beginning to be studied, but some current evidence suggests that the action of T-regs with specificity for microbial antigens may suppress protective immune responses to some infections but may also suppress excessive or injurious host responses.[449]

T-cell memory. Some proportion of activated $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells become endowed with the capacity for long-term antigenic memory and can rapidly become effectors on re-exposure to specific antigen. Whether these cells develop directly from naïve T cells or previously have been effector cells, or both, is uncertain, and the mechanisms by which they become memory T cells are poorly understood. Among the features of memory T cells are high-level expression of CD45RO, the ability to suppress activation of naïve T cells of the same specificity, and a homeostatic level of ongoing proliferation in bone marrow and peripheral lymphoid organs.[296,357,481,599]

T-cell activation by superantigens. The term *superantigen* describes a class of proteins, mainly microbial exotoxins, including most staphylococcal enterotoxins, staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome toxin–1 (TSST-1), and related streptococcal TSST-1–like toxins. These bacterial toxins are potent pyrogens, can induce a potentially lethal toxic shock syndrome, and contain binding domains for both T-cell receptor V regions and MHC class II molecules. Superantigens bypass normal antigen-processing and presentation pathways by binding directly to class II MHC molecules on antigen-presenting cells and to specific variable regions on the β-chain of the T-cell antigen receptor. Through these interactions, superantigens induce a polyclonal activation of T cells at orders of magnitude above levels induced by antigen-specific activation, resulting in massive release of cytokines from T cells and antigen-presenting cells, including TNF-α and TNF-β, IL-1, IL-2, and IFN-γ, that are believed to be responsible for the most severe features of toxic shock syndromes.[14,450]

B Lymphocytes and Immunoglobulins

B lymphocytes. B lymphocytes (B cells) are the source of humoral immunity in the form of specific immunoglobulin. The earliest recognizable marrow precursors of B cells are pro-B cells whose surfaces bear the pan-B marker CD19. Further differentiation produces pre-B cells and then mature B cells, the latter expressing cell-surface immunoglobulin by which they recognize and bind antigen. B lymphocytes constitute approximately 20% of the lymphocytes in the circulation and peripheral lymphoid tissues, including the lymph nodes, spleen, bone marrow, tonsils, and intestines, and they are identified by the presence of surface immunoglobulin and the pan-B differentiation markers CD19 and CD20.[109,371]

B-cell activation is initiated by recognition and binding of specific antigens to B-cell surface immunoglobulins. Early activation leads to increased expression of receptors that either bind cytokines (e.g., IL-2, IL-4, and IL-6) or interact with T cells,[327] leading in turn to clonal

proliferation and differentiation into memory B cells and plasma cells in the germinal centers of peripheral lymphoid tissue.[302] Some data suggest that B-cell differentiation into memory B cells is favored by exposure to the CD40 ligand on dendritic cells in lymphoid organs, whereas differentiation into plasma cells is favored by exposure to CD23, IL-1α, IL-6, and IL-10.[302,540] The plasma cells, later found in bone marrow and liver as well as peripheral lymphoid tissue, are responsible for most free immunoglobulin production.[540]

The B-cell response to protein antigens depends on T-cell help. B cells can process and present antigen to $CD4^+$ T_{FH} cells they encounter in the lymph nodes and spleen.[301,302,540] In the typical sequence of events, B-cell surface immunoglobulin binds to a protein antigen, which is internalized, processed, and presented to the T cell via class II MHC molecules. B cell–mediated activation of T cells during antigen presentation is much more effective for memory T cells, whereas naïve T cells are more likely to be turned off or rendered tolerant.[197,220] T-cell help is provided for B-cell proliferation and production of antibody against the specific protein antigen. This is mediated by signaling via CD40-ligand interactions with CD40 on the B cell and by the release of cytokines, which also can induce isotype switching.[163,405,526] Most B-lymphocyte responses to polysaccharide antigens proceed largely without formal T-cell help, although antibody responses to some such antigens may be enhanced in the presence of T cells.[384]

Immunoglobulin. Immunoglobulin molecules may be bound at the surface of B cells or free in the circulation, mucosal secretions, or tissues. Free immunoglobulins function in host defense against infection by binding to microbial surfaces to prevent microbial attachment, activating complement via the classical pathway, neutralizing viruses and toxins, and participating in the formation of immune complexes.[128]

Ig molecules are composed of two identical heavy and two identical light chains, as diagrammed in Fig. 2.8.[186,430] The carboxyl terminus of the immunoglobulin molecule is the heavy chain constant, or Fc, region. The amino acid sequence of this region determines the immunoglobulin isotype. The heavy chain is encoded by V, (D), J, and constant (C) regions on chromosome 14.[63,571] Each immunoglobulin molecule has a pair of either κ or λ light chains, defined by distinct constant regions.

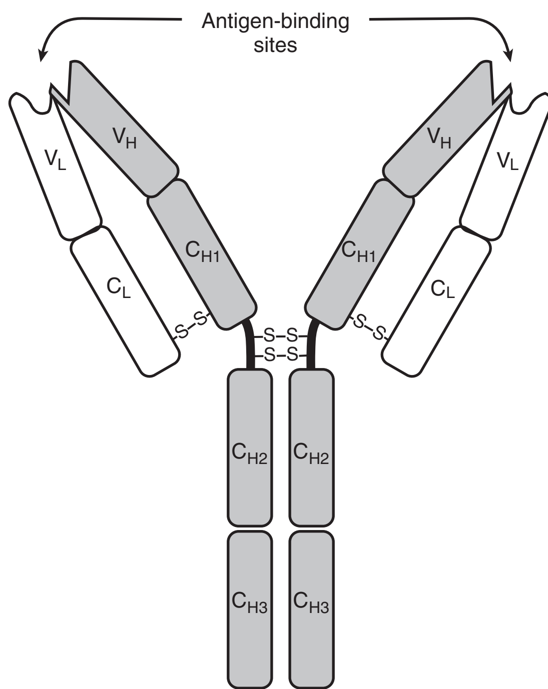


FIG. 2.8 Structure of an immunoglobulin molecule. The schematic structure of immunoglobulin G (IgG) is shown, depicting the variable (V) and constant (C) regions of both the heavy (H) and light (L) chains, the disulfide bonds that link the two heavy chains at the hinge region and the CL region with CH_1, and the antigen-binding sites formed by the complementarity-determining regions of VH and VL.

The variable region of the immunoglobulin molecule contains the antigen-binding site. Like the T-cell receptor, the Fab region consists of two identical heavy and light chain pairs; similarly, broadly diverse antigen specificity results from the variable nature of recombinase-mediated DNA rearrangements of the three hypervariable, or complementarity-determining, regions (CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3) and the four framework regions during B-cell development.[201,334,359] The imprecision inherent in this rearrangement, involving mechanisms similar to those described for the T-cell receptor, leads to the generation of more than 10^{12} potential antigenic specificities. Somatic hypermutation of variable regions after gene rearrangement adds to the repertoire, and further diversity results from differences in approximation of the three CDRs in relation to each other, affecting the three-dimensional structure of the antigen recognition site.[408,433] Thus unlike most T-cell receptors, which recognize specific peptide sequences, the antigen-binding domain of an immunoglobulin molecule recognizes the three-dimensional structure of its respective antigen.[43,156]

All immunoglobulin is derived from B cells expressing surface IgM. B cells may change immunoglobulin isotype when they differentiate into plasma cells, which produce only one class or subclass of immunoglobulin each. Isotypes other than IgM are the result of isotype switching by replacing a part of the constant region of the immunoglobulin heavy chain with another isotype-specific segment.[447,526] As already noted, isotype switching primarily depends on specific B-cell interactions with cytokines and T cells. The variable region remains unchanged during isotype switching; thus there is no change in antigen specificity. However, important features of immunoglobulins, including half-life, localization in tissues, ability to activate complement, and interactions with cellular IgG receptors, are directly determined by isotype.[91,287,556]

In addition to isotype switching, immunoglobulins undergo the process of "affinity maturation." As B cells proliferate in lymphoid tissue in response to persistent or repeated antigen exposure and T-cell help, they undergo V-region somatic hypermutation. When this mutation results in a reduced or absent affinity for antigen, B cells are less able to become activated and elicit T-cell help. Such B cells die by apoptosis, removing lower affinity immunoglobulin from the repertoire. Alternatively, B cells that undergo a mutation resulting in increased affinity for antigen are better able to bind antigen, present antigenic peptides to T cells, receive T-cell help, and survive to give rise to plasma cells, which in turn will produce immunoglobulin with higher affinity. This is a process that occurs as a result of booster doses of vaccines or during persistent infections, as with cytomegalovirus, for example.[26,444]

Immunoglobulin isotypes. IgG accounts for about 80% of circulating immunoglobulin and includes the subclasses IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4.[64] The half-life of IgG ordinarily is about 21 days (7 days for IgG3).[287] Initial exposure to most microbial protein antigens first induces IgM and then an IgG response consisting of IgG1 and IgG3. IgG2 and IgG4 usually are produced during the secondary immune response. IgG1 usually is made in response to protein antigens.[287] In adults, the main antibody response to polysaccharides is IgG2, whereas in infants IgG1 predominates.[6,17] The functions of IgG in host defense include blocking microbial attachment, opsonization, complement activation, toxin and virus neutralization, and promoting antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity. IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3, but not IgG4, can trigger complement activation via the classical pathway by binding to C1q.[91]

Free IgM usually exists as an immunoglobulin pentamer that has a molecular weight of approximately 950,000 and is stabilized by a single J chain.[186,314,374,433] Present mainly in the circulation, its half-life is approximately 8 to 10 days. The IgM response is the earliest of the isotype responses, appearing within the first few days of infection, but it is transient. The formation of an IgM response in the absence of an IgG response to infection is not associated with the formation of memory B cells. The main direct action of IgM in host defense is the activation of complement via the classical pathway.[374]

IgA exists in monomeric circulating and polymeric secretory forms and has a half-life of about 7 days.[287] Both forms are produced mainly by plasma cells that have migrated to mucosal sites. Secretory IgA is made up of two or three IgA molecules joined by a stabilizing J segment

that is secreted by plasma cells and a secretory component produced by mucosal epithelial cells.[303,314] The secretory component permits delivery of IgA to mucosal surfaces.[406] There are two subclasses, IgA1 and IgA2, that differ in the composition of their heavy chains. Most IgA in the circulation is IgA1, whereas most IgA in secretions is IgA2. IgA1 may be cleaved at mucosal sites by bacterial proteases.[313] IgA neutralizes viruses at mucosal sites, may block bacterial adhesion, and can act directly as an opsonin to promote phagocytosis and via Fcα receptors.[278,303]

The IgE molecule has a molecular weight of 200,000 and a half-life of only 2.3 days.[287] Most IgE is produced by plasma cells in lymphoid tissue near gastrointestinal and respiratory mucosal surfaces and released into the circulation.[286,534] IgE acts via Fcε receptors to trigger activation and degranulation of mast cells and basophils, leading to immediate hypersensitivity reactions.[534] Persons with intestinal metazoan parasites often have elevated serum levels of IgE, and IgE may have a role in protecting against parasitic disease by stimulating mediator release from mast cells that can recruit eosinophils and cause intestinal smooth muscle contraction and expulsion of parasites.[534]

IgD has a molecular weight of approximately 180,000 and a half-life of 3 days.[287] It is expressed along with IgM on surfaces of naïve B cells but is present in normal adult serum and secretions in very low concentrations. Some antigenic specificity for IgD has been demonstrated, and although its function in host defense is unclear, it may serve as a secondary antigen receptor on B cells, where it may regulate the development of B-cell antibody responses.[76]

CLINICAL CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH DEFICIENT HOST RESPONSES TO INFECTION

Immature Host Responses of the Newborn Infant

It is well recognized that newborn infants are much more susceptible to serious infections from many types of organisms than are older children and adults. This predisposition to infection is even more profound in infants born prematurely. The basis for this special vulnerability of the neonate is complex and encompasses all arms of the immune system.[332,342,583]

Cell-Mediated Immunity

Antigen presentation per se, via the mechanisms discussed earlier, appears to be relatively intact in the newborn infant. Expression of class I and II MHC molecules has been documented in a broad range of fetal tissues by 12 weeks' gestation,[271,419] and levels of expression are sufficient to mediate normal MHC class II–restricted antigen presentation by neonatal monocytes to maternal or paternal CD4$^+$ T cells, as well as to induce vigorous rejection of allogeneic fetal tissue by CD8$^+$ cytotoxic T cells.[258,270]

By about 20 weeks' gestation, the fetal repertoire of diversity of T-cell receptors has developed fully.[561] At the time of birth, although most basic functions of cell-mediated immunity are present, a high proportion of immature T cells are in the peripheral circulation, which can be identified by their coexpression of CD4 and CD8.[342] This phenotype typifies type II thymocytes, which usually are not found in the periphery in older persons.

Neonatal T cells appear to be relatively deficient in most of their major functions, including CD8$^+$ T cell–mediated cytotoxicity, delayed hypersensitivity, T-cell help for B-cell differentiation, and diminished cytokine production. Lack of prior antigenic exposure largely explains these defects because memory T cells are much more efficient in all of these functions.[256,342]

B Cells and Antibody

B cells. Pre-B cells are found in the fetal liver and omentum by 8 weeks' gestation and in the fetal bone marrow by 13 weeks' gestation.[228,342,516] Pre-B cells with surface IgM have been detected as early as 10 weeks' gestation. After 30 weeks' gestation and delivery, pre-B cells are seen only in the bone marrow. Mature B cells are present in the circulation by the eleventh week and have reached adult levels in the bone marrow, blood, and spleen by the twenty-second week of gestation.[161,228,516]

Fetal B cells express only IgM, whereas most adult B cells express both IgM and IgD. Neonatal B cells may express three immunoglobulin isotypes (e.g., different combinations of IgG, IgA, IgM, and IgD) on their surfaces.[228,250]

Although germinal centers are not present in lymphoid tissue at birth, they begin to develop in the first few months of life concomitant with the infant's exposure to antigens.[544] Despite conflicting in vitro data, neonatal T-cell help for B cells probably is comparable to that of adult T cells, as is reflected by the excellent T-dependent antibody response of the newborn to immunization with protein antigens.[165] In contrast to B cells of older individuals, B cells of neonates and young infants cannot respond to pure polysaccharide antigens. The recruitment of T-cell help to enhance this immature response to polysaccharides has been achieved with the advent of protein-polysaccharide conjugate vaccines. Such vaccines elicit help from T cells specific for peptides derived from the protein component as presented by polysaccharide-specific B cells that have internalized the protein-polysaccharide complex, allowing peptide-specific T cells to activate polysaccharide-specific B cells.[75]

Antibody. Maternal IgG accounts for the great majority of the newborn's circulating immunoglobulin because almost none is made by the healthy fetus and IgG is the only isotype of maternal immunoglobulin that crosses the placenta.[311,362] Maternal transport of IgG can be detected as early as 8 weeks' gestation, and the newborn's IgG level is directly proportional to gestational age, reaching 100 mg/dL by 17 to 20 weeks' gestation and 50% of the maternal level by 30 weeks' gestation (Fig. 2.9).[47,90,111] Maternal IgG is transported both passively and actively via trophoblast Fc receptors. Trophoblast Fc receptors have higher affinity for IgG1 and IgG3 than for IgG2 and IgG4, and thus more of those subclasses are transported from the mother.[336]

The concept of passive transfer of protective IgG is the basis for development of vaccines for maternal immunization before or during pregnancy so that passive transfer of vaccine-induced antibody will result in protection during the neonatal period. Examples of organisms for which such strategies have been investigated include group B streptococcus, *H. influenzae* type b, meningococcus, pneumococcus, rotavirus, and respiratory syncytial virus.[46,194,282]

By about 2 months of chronologic age, approximately half of the term infant's quantitative IgG is of maternal and half is of infant origin. The physiologic nadir of IgG in all infants is about 3 to 4 months of age and ranges from less than 100 mg/dL in preterm infants with very-low-birth weight to about 400 mg/dL in term infants (see Fig. 2.9).[47,593] Maternal IgG usually has waned completely by about 12 months of age, at which time infant levels are approximately 60% of adult levels. Production of IgG1 and IgG3 matures more rapidly than that of IgG2 and IgG4, reaching adult levels by approximately 8 years of age, versus 10 and 12 years of age, respectively.[416]

Little IgM, IgA, IgE, or IgD normally is produced by the fetus, and none is transported from the mother.[311,362] The presence of total IgM levels greater than 20 mg/dL at birth suggests an intrauterine infection, and documentation at birth of specific serum IgM or IgA against relevant organisms, such as *T. gondii* and others, would be diagnostic.[192,398,418] Serum IgA levels at birth in both preterm and term infants usually are less than 5 mg/dL and consist of both IgA1 and IgA2. Secretory IgA is not detectable until after birth but usually is present within the first few weeks of life. IgM and IgA reach approximately 60% and 20% of adult levels by 1 year of age, respectively (see Fig. 2.9). Secretory IgA reaches adult levels by 6 to 8 years of age.[342]

It has been documented that the fetus can respond to antigenic stimulation in the form of maternal immunization with tetanus toxoid vaccine and be primed for a secondary antibody response to repeat immunization after birth.[233,234] The amount of fetal antibody produced in response to intrauterine antigenic stimulation is proportional to gestational age.[162,528]

Maternal antibody inhibits the infants' ability to respond to live-virus vaccines against certain organisms, such as measles, but it does not prevent them from mounting protective immune responses to most childhood vaccine antigens, such as tetanus, diphtheria, polio, hepatitis B, and protein-conjugated polysaccharide vaccines.[12] In general, neonates have protective responses to T-dependent antigens even though they

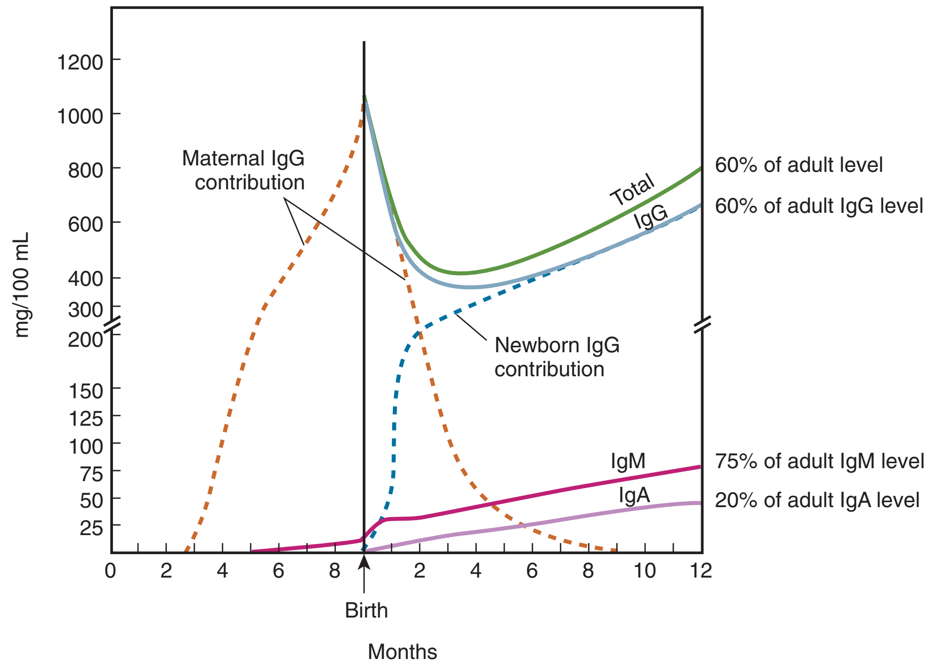


FIG. 2.9 Immunoglobulin (IgG, IgM, and IgA) levels in the fetus and infant in the first year of life. The IgG of the fetus and newborn infant solely is of maternal origin. The maternal IgG disappears by 9 months of age, by which time endogenous synthesis of IgG by the infant is well established. The IgM and IgA of the neonate are synthesized entirely endogenously because maternal IgM and IgA do not cross the placenta. (From Braun J, Stiehm ER. The B-lymphocyte system. In: Stiehm ER, editor. *Immunologic Disorders in Infants and Children*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1996:67.)

may produce less antibody to some antigens than do older infants and adults.[11,155,165,209,506,512]

The newborn infant's response to T-independent antigens, such as polysaccharides, is poor.[237] The antibody response to most such antigens, including the polysaccharide capsules of group B streptococci, pneumococci, and *H. influenzae* type b, is not mature until 18 to 24 months of age.[510] In contrast, in the first few weeks of life, infants mount excellent antibody responses to T-independent polysaccharide antigens that have been rendered T-dependent by covalent conjugation of the polysaccharide to a protein carrier, as noted earlier.[75]

The response of premature infants to most routine childhood vaccines by 2 months of age, including diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, and oral and inactivated polio, is comparable to that of 2-month-old term infants.[7,65,116,512] However, premature infants may not respond as well to hepatitis B vaccine for reasons that are unclear.[137,330]

Complement

Complement proteins do not cross the placenta, but there is evidence for fetal synthesis of complement beginning as early as 5.5 weeks' gestation, and most complement proteins are present by 10 weeks' gestation.[135,311] Levels of complement activity and of individual complement components vary significantly among infants, but, in general, classical pathway hemolytic activity of term neonates ranges from 60% to 90% of normal adult values.[187,594] Alternative pathway hemolytic activity is decreased to approximately 50% to 70% of normal adult values at term.[5,184,409,502] Complement activity usually is lower in premature than term infants.[409,502]

Hemolytic activity of both the classical and alternative pathways rises rapidly and reaches adult levels by 3 to 6 months of age and by approximately 6 to 18 months of age, respectively. In addition to hemolytic activity, complement-mediated opsonic and bactericidal activity is decreased in newborn sera and generally correlates with C3 and factor B levels.[187] Studies of opsonic and bactericidal activity of newborn sera have been reviewed in detail elsewhere.[187,289] Levels of individual complement proteins do not always correlate with their functional activity.[229,277] Zach and Hostetter[594] reported not only that total C3 levels in neonates were decreased but also that C3 thioester reactivity was decreased and that it correlated with gestational age.

Phagocytes

The newborn infant exhibits both quantitative and qualitative deficits in phagocytic defenses. Although the number of circulating PMNs usually does not differ greatly from that in older children and adults, under conditions of stress, including systemic infection, the availability of marrow reserves of PMNs is impaired markedly.[125] Whereas the ratio of marrow neutrophil reserves to circulating cells in older persons is nearly 15:1, in the newborn infant this ratio is more often between 2:1 and 3:1.[125] Thus, neutropenia is more likely during severe systemic infections in the newborn than in older children and adults.[125] Distinct from this quantitative deficiency in marrow reserves of PMNs, functional impairments of PMNs also are important in understanding neonatal phagocytic defenses.

The most important and best-documented functional impairments of neonatal PMNs are related to defective adhesion and migration.[3,4,23–25,27,317,367,375,376] Specific structural, functional, and biochemical abnormalities have been documented, any or all of which may contribute to the overall impairment in adhesion and migration of these cells.[267] Impaired adhesion of neonatal PMNs to endothelial cells and other biologic substrates has been linked with deficiencies in the expression or function of the β_2 integrins Mac-1 (CD11b/CD18) and LFA-1 (CD11a/CD18).[3,26,95,295,367] Perhaps the best documented of these is the diminished level of surface expression of Mac-1 on activated neonatal PMNs, although expression on resting PMNs is similar to that of adults.[95,295] The total cell content of Mac-1 in PMN at the time of birth is related directly to gestational age, and cell lysates of PMNs from very early premature infants (less than 30 weeks' gestation) have been found to contain less than 20% of the Mac-1 content of an equal number of adult PMNs, increasing to about 60% by term.[367] The PMN content of LFA-1, which is normal at term, appears to be reduced in infants born before 35 weeks' gestation.[367] In addition to reduced integrin expression, reduced adhesive function of the β_2 integrin molecules themselves at the surface of activated PMN has been documented.[26] Several other

defects of neonatal relative to adult PMNs that might influence chemotaxis have been documented. These include defective redistribution of surface adhesion sites,[24] impaired uropod formation during stimulated shape change,[25] reduced cell deformability,[293] impaired microtubule assembly,[25] deficient F-actin polymerization,[252,479] reduced lactoferrin content and release,[23] reduced ability to effect membrane depolarization and intracellular calcium ion flux,[478] and impaired uptake of glucose during stimulation by chemoattractants.[4]

Evidence suggests that the number and binding efficiencies of neonatal PMN receptors for chemoattractants are normal.[24,478,532] In some studies in which assay conditions are designed to expose a potential defect (e.g., limiting concentrations of opsonins and high bacterial inocula), defects in phagocytosis and killing have been demonstrated.[376,377]

Primary and Heritable Immunologic Deficiencies

The infant or toddler who experiences even six to eight presumed viral upper respiratory tract infections during the course of a winter season, without other complications, ordinarily would not be considered likely to have an immunodeficiency. In contrast, a child who had experienced several episodes of acute otitis media in the previous 4 months, perhaps some accompanied by sinusitis or pneumonia, has displayed reasonable cause to suspect a humoral immunodeficiency.[140] For certain organisms, infection in the healthy host is so decidedly uncommon that even a single episode should prompt a high suspicion of impaired host defenses. *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia strongly suggests a severe defect of T-cell number or function.[140] Similarly, lymphadenitis or osteomyelitis caused by gram-negative enteric bacilli suggests a defect of phagocytic killing, such as chronic granulomatous disease.[291,448]

The International Union of Immunological Societies, through an expert committee on primary immunodeficiency diseases, periodically publishes an updated classification of all known primary immunodeficiency disorders based on phenotypic features.[85] The following discussion of specific immunologic defects, their genetic basis (if known), and their infectious consequences focuses on well-characterized prototypic disorders within most major classes of defects but also will address other related disorders.

Antibody Deficiencies

Humoral immunity is provided by specific antibody and plays an important role in host defense against most pathogens, as is illustrated by the finding that patients with significant antibody deficiencies develop recurrent and sometimes life-threatening infections.[139,147] They characteristically are prone to recurrent otitis media, sinusitis, pneumonia, and, less often, sepsis and meningitis.

X-linked agammaglobulinemia. X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA), first described by Bruton, is a primary immunodeficiency disorder of the B-cell lineage and is the most serious disorder of humoral immunity.[98,335,468] It is characterized by absent or severely decreased numbers of circulating B lymphocytes and absent or extremely low levels of all classes of circulating immunoglobulins. It is caused by several different mutations in the gene encoding for a B-cell–specific tyrosine kinase, *Btk,* which maps to the long arm of the X chromosome at Xq22.[554,564] This abnormality in kinase activity results in an arrest in the development of B cells, usually at the pre-B stage, and thus few B cells or their progeny (e.g., plasma cells) are in the circulation or lymphoid tissues.[239]

Most persons with XLA develop chronic or recurrent pyogenic bacterial respiratory or gastrointestinal tract infections, and some may have recurrent skin infections.[98,335] Sepsis and serious focal infections resulting from bacteremia do not occur as frequently but are more common and more severe than in normal hosts. The causative agents of most of these infections are *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae,* and *Moraxella catarrhalis*, but *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* as well as other gram-negative organisms, may be implicated. The most troublesome gastrointestinal tract infections in XLA are caused by *Salmonella, Campylobacter,* and chronic infestation with *G. lamblia.* These patients have been found to have unusually severe or chronic enterovirus infections that can be manifested by chronic arthritis, meningoencephalitis, dermatomyositis, hepatitis, or a combination thereof, and several patients with XLA have developed vaccine-related paralytic poliomyelitis after receiving the live oral polio vaccine.[335]

The only typical abnormality on physical examination in XLA that is not related directly to infections is the absence or a paucity of normal B-cell–containing lymphoid tissues, such as tonsils, adenoids, and peripheral lymph nodes.

The diagnosis of XLA can be confirmed by studying lymphocyte markers and demonstrating a lack of circulating cells that stain for surface immunoglobulin or with B-cell–specific monoclonal antibodies against CD19, CD20, or both. The number and function of T lymphocytes are normal in XLA. It may be difficult to establish the diagnosis based on immunoglobulin levels in the newborn period because of the presence of maternally derived IgG. However, if suspected, the diagnosis can be made in the newborn period by documenting a paucity of circulating B cells by flow cytometry.

Although individuals with XLA ordinarily are thought of as having a "pure" B-cell disorder, recent evidence reveals that the absence of B cells in XLA is associated with a contracted T-cell receptor repertoire and that mice that lack B cells are unable to prime $CD4^+$ T cells for their effector function in clearing *Pneumocystis* infection, findings that are consistent with the important role of B cells in presenting antigen to $CD4^+$ T cells.[420,451]

In contrast to carriers of some other X-linked diseases examined later (see discussion of chronic granulomatous disease), circulating B lymphocytes of XLA carriers express only one population of B cells, those with the normal allele on the X chromosome, presumably because B cells with the mutant allele are at a selective disadvantage and do not develop. Advances in genetic techniques have enabled detection of maternal carriers of XLA.[139] Prenatal diagnosis can be made by genetic studies of amniotic fluid cells or quantitation of fetal circulating B cells.[139]

The prognosis for patients with XLA has improved markedly with earlier diagnosis, high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) therapy, and aggressive use of antibiotics. Before the availability of IVIG, most patients who survived to the third decade of life had chronic lung disease from recurrent pulmonary infections and hearing loss from recurrent otitis media.[335]

IgG subclass deficiency. Persons with IgG subclass deficiencies have levels of one or more IgG subclass that are more than two standard deviations below normal for age, normal to slightly decreased total IgG, normal levels of other immunoglobulin isotypes, and, often, a poor antibody response to certain antigens.*

Patients with IgG subclass deficiency who also have IgM and IgA deficiency may have another immunodeficiency disorder such as common variable immunodeficiency (CVID).

The most common kinds of infections in patients with any clinically significant IgG subclass deficiency include otitis media, sinusitis, and pneumonia. Ordinarily, these patients do not have life-threatening systemic infections.

Deficiency of IgG1 is likely to be associated with subnormal levels of total IgG because this subclass accounts for about 60% of total IgG, and it often is associated with other subclass deficiencies.[16,17,492,498–500]

IgG2 deficiency usually is associated with normal total serum IgG levels and is more likely to be clinically significant if accompanied by IgG4 or IgA deficiency. Patients with IgG2 deficiency typically have poor antibody responses to polysaccharide antigens but normal responses to protein antigens. Like most patients with deficiencies of humoral immunity, their infections primarily are due to encapsulated bacteria and are localized to the respiratory tract.[498,500]

IgG3 deficiency has been associated with low total levels of serum IgG and recurrent respiratory infections, which also may lead to chronic pulmonary disease.[415]

IgG4 deficiency is difficult to diagnose because many normal persons have low serum levels of IgG4, and most normal infants have no detectable IgG4.[416] IgG4 deficiency appears to be of clinical significance, however, if it is associated with IgG2 and IgA deficiency.

The treatment for children with IgG subclass deficiency typically is individualized according to the frequency and severity of symptoms. Noninvasive infections usually can be treated successfully with appropriate antibiotics. Patients with more severe presentations may benefit from

*References 260–262, 386, 416, 425, 426, 491, 492, 497–501.

regular IVIG therapy, but those who also are completely IgA-deficient should be treated only with IgA-depleted IVIG preparations.

IgA deficiency. IgA deficiency is the most common immunodeficiency, occurring as frequently as 1/400. This disorder appears to occur sporadically, but familial cases have been described.[22,147] Most of the functions of serum IgA can be performed by IgG and IgM.[147,416] Thus, although deficiencies of secretory IgA may lead to recurrent respiratory or gastrointestinal tract infections, deficiency of serum IgA alone usually is not associated with increased susceptibility to systemic infections.[22] IgA deficiency has been associated with many other conditions, including recurrent infections, IgG2 deficiency, autoimmune disorders, and malignancy.[21] Recurrent infections are most likely to occur in the subset of IgA-deficient patients who also have IgG2 deficiency.[147,425] The infections usually are relatively mild and involve the upper respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts. Chronic gastrointestinal tract disease in these patients can be caused by *G. lamblia* infestations, nodular lymphoid hyperplasia, lactose intolerance, malabsorption, or inflammatory bowel disease. Other autoimmune diseases associated with IgA deficiency include rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, thyroiditis, myasthenia gravis, and vitiligo.[147] About 20% of IgA-deficient patients have allergy, and many have elevated levels of IgE.[147] Food allergy is common and may be the result of abnormal processing of antigen at mucosal surfaces.

Rare patients with serum IgA levels less than 5 mg/dL who receive transfusions may make antibody against donor IgA and have severe reactions when transfused again. IVIG reactions also may occur because IVIG preparations contain varying amounts of IgA. IgA-depleted preparations are available and usually are well tolerated.[150]

Transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy. The syndrome of transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy can be differentiated from the physiologic hypogammaglobulinemia in infants because immunoglobulin levels of normal infants begin to rise by about 6 months of age, whereas those of infants with transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy do not begin to increase until between 18 and 36 months of age.[416] Infants suspected of having this syndrome should be evaluated for XLA and CVID (see later discussion) and followed closely until their immunoglobulin levels normalize for age.

Antibody deficiency with normal or elevated levels of immunoglobulins. Some persons with normal levels of all circulating immunoglobulin isotypes are at increased risk for infections similar to those seen in specific deficiencies of immunoglobulin levels described earlier.[16,18,416] As in other forms of humoral immunodeficiency, the most common infections in these patients are recurrent bacterial respiratory tract infections, although a few patients have developed pneumococcal sepsis.[18] Such persons can be identified by their inability to make antibody in response to stimulation with specific antigens. A good way to test for this disorder is to immunize with protein antigens, such as tetanus and diphtheria toxoids, and with polysaccharide antigens, such as pneumococcal and *H. influenzae* type b capsular polysaccharide vaccines. Patients who can respond to protein but not to polysaccharide antigens usually will respond to protein-polysaccharide conjugates. Treatment with IVIG may help prevent recurrent infections in these patients, although their normal overall levels of immunoglobulin can pose difficulties in determining the appropriate doses of IVIG and intervals between infusions.

Defects of Cell-Mediated Immunity: DiGeorge Syndrome

The prototypic pure T-cell defect, DiGeorge syndrome, is characterized clinically by congenital heart disease (usually involving the aortic arch), hypocalcemic tetany, unusual facial features, and recurrent infections.[173] The classical, or complete, form of this disorder has absence or hypoplasia of the thymus and parathyroid glands, cardiac or aortic arch deformities, and a stereotypical constellation of abnormal facial features, most notably micrognathia and hypertelorism, all associated with malformation of the 4th and 5th branchial arches during embryogenesis.[173,318,350,537] Although the condition usually is considered to be associated with immunodeficiency because of the thymic hypoplasia, only about 25% of patients actually exhibit an immunologic defect.[55] The term *partial DiGeorge syndrome* sometimes has been used to describe patients with the typical constellation of anatomic findings but without immunodeficiency or similar patients with mild immunologic impairment.[273] Some sources designate this disorder as an "anomaly" or "sequence" rather than a syndrome because of confusion about its relationship to 22q11 deletion syndrome (del22q11) or the more recently defined microdeletion, del22p11.2, a deletion also associated with velocardiofacial syndrome.[97] Robin and Shprintzen[459] hold that the findings in DiGeorge sequence, although often associated with del22q11.2, are etiologically heterogeneous and have been associated with other chromosomal deletions such as del10p and del17p or del10q13. Moreover, some individuals with del22p11.2 exhibit abnormalities quite distinct from those of the DiGeorge sequence.[243,244,273,326,437,459] One candidate gene, *TBX1,* encoding a T-box transcription factor and located in 22q.11.2, has been a recent focus of research into the underlying genetic defect in DiGeorge syndrome. Although mice with mutations in *TBX1* exhibit some features consistent with DiGeorge syndrome, data remain insufficient to confirm the precise role of *TBX1* in human patients with this disorder.[249]

Because of the serious nature of the cardiovascular defect, many patients with DiGeorge syndrome in earlier decades have not survived long enough for the immune defect to become a clinical problem.[273] However, with improvements in surgical treatment of the heart defects, more of these infants now survive long enough to display manifestations of the immunodeficiency that results in an increased frequency or severity of viral and fungal infections, as well as *Pneumocystis* pneumonia. In such patients, management often has included prophylaxis against *Pneumocystis,* avoidance of live virus vaccines, and, because antibody production is poor as a result of lack of T-cell help, periodic IVIG infusions.[273] HLA-matched bone marrow transplantation has been successful in some cases.[83,238,273] Earlier work with transplantation of fetal or postnatal thymic tissue provided some long-term success in correcting the immunologic defect.[238,273] Recently, a highly promising large series of cases of transplantation with postnatal cultured thymic tissue in patients with complete DiGeorge syndrome yielded immune reconstitution with 73% survival at 2 years.[361]

Combined Defects of Cellular and Humoral Immunity

Severe combined immunodeficiency disease. Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) describes a heterogeneous group of heritable immunodeficiencies that involve serious impairments of both cellular and humoral immunity, thus leading to recurrent severe infections by a wide range of viral, bacterial, and fungal organisms. SCID has multiple forms, which have been reviewed in greater detail elsewhere.[102,103,123] At this writing, at least 10 genes have been identified with abnormalities known to result in SCID. X-linked SCID, the most common form, is due to a mutation in the common γ chain of the receptor for IL-2 and several other cytokines (γ_c).[103,339] The other known forms of SCID are either known or presumed to be autosomal recessive. These include a deficiency of adenosine deaminase, a purine salvage pathway enzyme; a deficiency in Janus kinase 3 (Jak3), a cytokine receptor signaling molecule; and a defect in the α chain of the IL-7 receptor, IL-7Rα.[103,297,555] Mutation of one of at least six different genes whose products play a role in T-cell receptor or immunoglobulin gene recombination or T-cell receptor signaling, including RAG1, RAG2, Artemis, DNA ligase IV, CD3-δ, and CD3-ε, also results in SCID.[103,123,191,210,297,356,457] Additionally, SCID is caused by a mutation in CD45, a phosphatase that regulates signaling thresholds in immune cells.[297] Flow cytometry analysis of lymphocyte markers reveals very low to absent B- and T-cell numbers in patients with most forms of SCID.

Long-term management of patients with SCID involves modalities employed in both B- and T-cell disorders, including prophylaxis against *P. jiroveci* pneumonia, avoidance of live viral vaccines, and immunoglobulin replacement therapy.[103] Bone marrow transplantation from HLA-matched siblings has corrected the defect successfully in some cases and is considered the current treatment of choice.[101] Adenosine deaminase deficiency is of historical interest in that it is the first heritable disorder for which gene therapy was attempted, although early success was limited.[101] Approaches using retroviral-based gene therapy for X-linked SCID initially appeared to be successful. However, at least three patients developed lymphoproliferative disorders similar to lymphocytic leukemia, with malignant cells demonstrating insertion